

*DOROTHEUS OF  
SIDON: CARMEN  
ASTROLOGICUM  
RE-WORKED*

FROM DAVID PINGREE'S TRANSLATION

## PREFACE

---

This is a re-working, partially in my own words, of David Pingree's translation of Dorotheus of Sidon's *Carmen Astrologicum* primarily to make it easier to reference and study. If you are looking for the original text of the translation, there are a number of them online, most notably a copy of Pingree's original book on [Archive.org](#) or Deborah Houlding's copies of Pingree's translation along with her notes on the texts: [Book I](#), [Book II](#), [Book III](#), [Book III Notes](#).

The public domain [StarFont Sans](#) astrological fonts used in this document were created by Anthony I.P. Owen and made available as a Latex package by Matthew Skala.

This document was built from Latex files created with the [TexWorks](#) editor.

### Other works consulted

**CA** *Carmen Astrologicum: Dorotheus of Sidon* trans. David Pingree, Astrology Classics, 2005

**CAD** *Carmen Astrologicum: Dorotheus of Sidon: The 'Umar Al-Tabari Translation* trans. Benjamin N. Dykes. 2019.

**CAP** *Carmen Astrologicum: Dorotheus of Sidon* trans. David Pingree, Ascella, 1993.

**DH** *Notes on Dorotheus III:the haylāj, kadhkhudāh, and terms of life* by Deborah Houlding, [URL](#), as at August 03, 2020

**HHa** *A History of Horoscopic Astrology*, James Herschel Holden, AFA, 2nd. ed. 2006

## Useful Resources

### PlanetDance Astrology Software

A free astrology software application created by J.C. Remers. Includes a number Hellenistic Greek techniques under Horoscope->Classical.

### Ascensional Rising Times & Oblique Ascension Tables

One of the many astrology tools on the *AstroSeek* web site.

### Traditional Chart Calculator

AstroSeek chart calculator that produces a clean graphic with planet dignities, 7 Hermetic Lots, dodecatemoria, as well the ability to calculate circumambulations, profections, antiscia, and more.

## CONTENTS

---

<b>Preface</b>	<b>i</b>
<b>Other works consulted</b> . . . . .	<b>i</b>
<b>Useful Resources</b> . . . . .	<b>ii</b>
<b>Contents</b>	<b>iii</b>
<b>List of Figures</b>	<b>x</b>
<b>List of Tables</b>	<b>xi</b>
<b>1 On Upbringing</b>	<b>1</b>
<b>1.1 Triplicity and Sign Rulers</b> . . . . .	<b>1</b>
<b>1.2 Exaltation of the Planets</b> . . . . .	<b>3</b>
<b>1.3 Ease or Difficulty of the Birth</b> . . . . .	<b>3</b>
<b>1.4 Upbringing</b> . . . . .	<b>4</b>
<b>1.5 The Superior Places</b> . . . . .	<b>6</b>
<b>1.6 Power of the Seven Planets</b> . . . . .	<b>7</b>
<b>1.7 More on Upbringing</b> . . . . .	<b>8</b>
Good Upbringing . . . . .	<b>8</b>
No Upbringing . . . . .	<b>8</b>
Rejection or Exposure . . . . .	<b>9</b>
Calamity . . . . .	<b>10</b>
Injury to the person and his mother . . . . .	<b>10</b>
<b>1.8 Masculine and Feminine Hours</b> . . . . .	<b>10</b>
<b>1.9 Upbringing Again</b> . . . . .	<b>11</b>
<b>1.10 Is the Person and their Mother Free or         a Slave</b> . . . . .	<b>11</b>
Indications from the SAN . . . . .	<b>14</b>
Escape from Slavery, Service, or Poverty . . . . .	<b>14</b>
Effect of Jupiter . . . . .	<b>15</b>
<b>1.11 How many will own the person</b> . . . . .	<b>15</b>
<b>1.12 Upbringing and Livelihood</b> . . . . .	<b>16</b>
Moon on the 3rd Day after Birth . . . . .	<b>16</b>
Indications from the radix Moon . . . . .	<b>16</b>

Indications from the 10th Place from the Moon . . . . .	17
Indications for the Parents . . . . .	17
Indications for the Father from the Sun . .	18
Indications for the Mother from the Moon	19
<b>1.13 Lot of the Father</b> . . . . .	20
<b>1.14 Lot of the Mother</b> . . . . .	21
Separation of Parents . . . . .	21
The 4th Place . . . . .	22
<b>1.15 Parent Deaths</b> . . . . .	23
<b>1.16 Person's Inheritance</b> . . . . .	24
The Father's Property . . . . .	24
The Mother's Property . . . . .	25
<b>1.17 Number of Siblings</b> . . . . .	25
<b>1.18 On Brothers</b> . . . . .	26
<b>1.19 Lot of Brothers</b> . . . . .	26
<b>1.20 Brother's Love</b> . . . . .	27
<b>1.21 How many siblings?</b> . . . . .	27
Indications from the 3rd Place . . . . .	28
General Indications from Mars . . . . .	28
An Example Chart . . . . .	29
Other Indications from the Lot and Planets	30
Indications from the Lot of Fortune . . . .	31
Sibling's Death . . . . .	31
<b>1.22 The Native's Fortune, Property and Ill-</b> <b>ness</b> . . . . .	32
<b>1.23 Good and Evil Planets</b> . . . . .	32
<b>1.24 Judgments (Example Charts)</b> . . . . .	33
<b>1.25 Excellence of Fortune</b> . . . . .	39
<b>1.26 Magnitude of Fortune</b> . . . . .	41
Lot of Fortune . . . . .	42
Indications from the Malefics . . . . .	44
<b>1.27 The Decline of Status</b> . . . . .	44
2nd Place . . . . .	45
Lot of Livelihood . . . . .	46
Benefics Angular or Succedent . . . . .	47
Malefics Angular or Succedent . . . . .	48

1.28 Sign Gender, Direction, Sect, Triplicity	
Rulers . . . . .	48
<b>2 Judgments</b>	<b>50</b>
<b>2.1 Marriage</b> . . . . .	50
Indications from Venus . . . . .	50
Indications from the 7th Place . . . . .	51
<b>2.2 The Lot of Wedding (Man's)</b> . . . . .	52
<b>2.3 Lot of Wedding (Women)</b> . . . . .	52
Indications from Venus . . . . .	52
<b>2.4 Lot of Marriage</b> . . . . .	53
Indications for Marriage . . . . .	53
Indications against Marriage . . . . .	56
Other Indications . . . . .	57
<b>2.5 How many wives will he marry?</b> . . . . .	57
<b>2.6 Lot of Wedding by Day or Night</b> . . . . .	59
<b>2.7 Gender Tendencies</b> . . . . .	60
<b>2.8 Children</b> . . . . .	61
<b>2.9 Number of Children</b> . . . . .	61
Indications from the Moon and Venus . . . . .	61
Indications from Jupiter . . . . .	62
<b>2.10 Lot of Children</b> . . . . .	63
<b>2.11 Lot of Transit with respect to Children</b> . . . . .	64
<b>2.12 Lots of Male and Female Children</b> . . . . .	64
<b>2.13 Number of Male and Female Children</b> . . . . .	66
<b>2.14 Planets in Trine</b> . . . . .	66
<b>2.15 Planets in Square</b> . . . . .	69
<b>2.16 Planets in Opposition</b> . . . . .	76
<b>2.17 Planets in Sextile</b> . . . . .	80
<b>2.18 Saturn in a sign with another planet</b> . . . . .	81
<b>2.19 Planets in the same sign</b> . . . . .	82
<b>2.20 The Places of the Planets</b> . . . . .	86
<b>2.21 Moon in the Places</b> . . . . .	86
<b>2.22 The Sun in the Places</b> . . . . .	87
<b>2.23 Saturn in the Places</b> . . . . .	88
<b>2.24 Jupiter in the Places</b> . . . . .	90
<b>2.25 Mars in the Places</b> . . . . .	92

2.26	Venus in the Places . . . . .	94
2.27	Mercury in the Places . . . . .	97
2.28	Saturn in Another Planet's House . . . .	98
2.29	Jupiter in Another Planet's House . . . .	99
2.30	Mars in Another Planet's House . . . . .	100
2.31	Venus in Another Planet's House . . . . .	101
2.32	Mercury in Another Planet's House . . . .	101
2.33	Sun or Moon in Another Planet's House	102
	Sun and Moon together in Another's House	102
	Moon in Another Planet's House . . . . .	103
	Sun in Another Planet's House . . . . .	103
3	The Indicator and Governor	105
3.1	The Indicator (haylij) and Governor	
	(kadkhudah) . . . . .	105
	Definitions . . . . .	105
	Possible Indicator (haylaj or hyleg) . . . .	106
	An Exception for the Lights . . . . .	107
	The Sun . . . . .	107
	The Moon . . . . .	107
	The Ascendant . . . . .	108
	Possible Governor (kadkhudah or alcoco-	
	den) . . . . .	108
	Contradictory or unclear text re: the indi-	
	cator and governor . . . . .	109
	Indications from the Sun . . . . .	109
	Indications from the Moon . . . . .	109
	Indications from the Ascendant . . . .	109
	Other planets . . . . .	109
	Longevity Example Chart 3.1.1 . . . . .	111
	Longevity Example Chart 3.2.1 . . . . .	118
	Additional Advice on Prorogations . . . .	125
4	On the Transfer of Years	128
4.1	Proflections . . . . .	128
	Lord of the Year (LOY) . . . . .	129
	In bad condition . . . . .	130

	In good condition . . . . .	131
	Planets in or Aspecting the Protected Sign . . . . .	132
	Protection Reaching an Angle . . . . .	133
	The Protected 7th . . . . .	134
	Delineating Months . . . . .	134
	Unclear Instructions . . . . .	134
	Ruler of the Days . . . . .	136
<b>4.2</b>	<b>Illness . . . . .</b>	<b>139</b>
	Lot of Chronic Illness . . . . .	141
	Indications from the 4th House . . . . .	142
	Configurations indicating chronic illness . . . . .	142
	Conditions harmful to one's eyesight . . . . .	143
	Degrees Injurious to the Eyes . . . . .	144
	Timing . . . . .	144
	Side of body affected . . . . .	145
	Various configurations indicating madness . . . . .	145
	Various configurations indicating illnesses . . . . .	146
	Timing . . . . .	148
<b>4.3</b>	<b>Death . . . . .</b>	<b>148</b>
	The 8th . . . . .	149
	Lot of Death . . . . .	150
	Planet first to the Descendant . . . . .	150
	A Difficult Death . . . . .	150
	Triplicity Rulers of the 4th . . . . .	151
	Indications from the 7th . . . . .	152
<b>4.4</b>	<b>The Transfer of Planets . . . . .</b>	<b>153</b>
<b>4.5</b>	<b>The Cardines (Angles) . . . . .</b>	<b>159</b>
<b>5</b>	<b>On Interrogations . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>5.1</b>	<b>Introduction . . . . .</b>	<b>161</b>
<b>5.2</b>	<b>Judgment according to the crooked and the straight . . . . .</b>	<b>163</b>
<b>5.3</b>	<b>Judgment according to the tropical signs . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>5.4</b>	<b>Judgment according to the twin signs . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>5.5</b>	<b>The corruption of the Moon . . . . .</b>	<b>164</b>
<b>5.6</b>	<b>One who wishes to build a building . . . . .</b>	<b>171</b>
<b>5.7</b>	<b>If you wish to demolish a building . . . . .</b>	<b>171</b>



5.8 Renting out or Leasing property . . . . .	172
5.9 Buying and Selling . . . . .	173
5.10 The buying of land . . . . .	173
5.11 The buying of slaves . . . . .	174
5.12 The buying of animals . . . . .	175
5.13 If you want to free a slave . . . . .	175
5.14 Asking for a ruler or man to grant a request or gift . . . . .	176
5.15 If you want to write to or teach a man . . . . .	177
5.16 Marriage and matrimony . . . . .	177
Basic indications . . . . .	177
Indications from the Moon's sign . . . . .	178
Indications from Venus . . . . .	179
The likelihood of children . . . . .	179
The likely relationship . . . . .	180
5.17 The courtship and separation from a woman . . . . .	181
5.18 A pregnant woman, if her child will die in her body . . . . .	183
5.19 Partnership . . . . .	183
5.20 Debt and payment for it . . . . .	185
5.21 The journey . . . . .	186
5.22 Departure from a journey . . . . .	187
5.23 Buying a ship or building it . . . . .	189
5.24 Commencing to build a ship . . . . .	190
5.25 Commencing to row the ship in the water . . . . .	191
5.26 The arrival of a book, message, or letter . . . . .	195
5.27 Bondage and chains . . . . .	197
5.28 Judgment about what may not be after- wards of a matter which one hopes for, or according to this of things . . . . .	200
5.29 Query about the sick . . . . .	200
5.30 The commencement of all things . . . . .	201
5.31 The condition of someone who's sick . . . . .	202
5.32 Will the native's property increase or decrease? . . . . .	203

5.33 Which of two adversaries facing a judge will prevail? . . . . .	203
5.34 On whether a person will leave his land	207
5.35 On the recovery of goods stolen, lost, or mislaid . . . . .	207
Unlikely to be found . . . . .	208
Using the angles for various significators .	209
Indications from the Lights . . . . .	210
Moon's term gives condition of the goods .	211
What the Moon's sign indicates . . . . .	212
More on the Moon . . . . .	213
Identifying the thief . . . . .	213
5.36 The runaway . . . . .	219
Time unknown . . . . .	223
5.37 The treatment of Spirits . . . . .	225
5.38 Taking medicine or a remedy . . . . .	225
5.39 On being bled or going under the knife	225
5.40 Treating an eye infection or covering of over the eye or treatments with iron . .	226
5.41 Illness as Qitrinus the Sadwali says . . .	226
5.42 The Will . . . . .	231
5.43 On clarifying the phases of the Moon and its nodes . . . . .	232
<b>A Dodecatemoria</b>	<b>234</b>
A.1 Examples of using the 12ths . . . . .	236
Firmicus . . . . .	236
Paulus . . . . .	237
Olympidorus . . . . .	237
<b>B Visibility (Planet Phases)</b>	<b>239</b>

LIST OF FIGURES

---

1.1	The Superior Places . . . . .	7
1.2	Chart 01: Man with 5 Siblings . . . . .	29
1.3	Chart 02: Needy, Poor, Miserable . . . . .	33
1.4	Chart 03: Wealthy, Rich, Powerful . . . . .	34
1.5	Chart 04: Praised by kings, nobles, wealthy men	35
1.6	Chart 04: Eminent, powerful, praised . . . . .	36
1.7	Chart 05: Poor, unfortunate . . . . .	37
1.8	Chart 06: Wealthy, an evil end . . . . .	38
1.9	Chart 07: Noble family but raised in poverty .	39
3.1	Longevity Example Chart 3.1.01 . . . . .	112
3.2	Ptolemy's Climes . . . . .	113
3.3	OA table for Chart 3.1.1 calculated on Astro- seek . . . . .	115
3.4	Longevity Example Chart 3.2.01 . . . . .	118
4.1	Chart 07: Queen Victoria . . . . .	138

LIST OF TABLES

---

1.1 Signs and their Domicile Rulers . . . . . 2

1.2 Signs, their Triplicities and Rulers . . . . . 2

1.3 Planet Exaltations . . . . . 3

4.1 Profections . . . . . 128

B.1 Planet Phase (Visibility) . . . . . 239

## BOOK I ON UPBRINGING AND THE LIFE'S CONDITION

---

*In the name of God, the merciful and compassionate. May the lord be rich in compassion towards you.*

*This is the first book of Dorotheus the Egyptian, on the judgments concerning nativities. He chose it and selected it and picked it from the books which were before him, and he wrote it for his son Hermes.*

*He said to his son at the time of his testament: I shall relate to you, oh my son, and I shall explain to you so that you may depend on and be confident in your heart about what I shall show you of my work and words according to the stars which indicate for men what will pertain to them from the time of a [person's] birth till his leaving the world, if God wills. I have traveled, oh my son, in many cities, and I have seen the wondrous things which are in Egypt and in Babylon, which is in the direction of the Euphrates. I collected the best of their sayings from the first [authorities] who were before me like the bees which gather [honey] from the trees and all kinds of plants; for from it there is the honey of medicine.*

### 1.1 Triplicity and Sign Rulers

Know the longitude and latitudes of the seven planets ( $\odot, \text{☿}, \text{♂}, \text{♀}, \text{♂}, \text{♂}, \text{♂}$ ), the degrees of the Ascendant and MC, which signs are straight and crooked<sup>2</sup> in rising, and that

---

<sup>2</sup>The *straight* signs are those that appear to rise straight up from the horizon taking slightly more than two hours each:  $\text{♈}$  thru

the signs, their triplicities and rulers are:

Sign	Ruler	Sign	Ruler
♈	♂	♊	♀
♉	♀	♋	♂
♊	♀	♌	♂
♋	♂	♍	♂
♌	♂	♎	♂
♍	♀	♏	♂

Table 1.1: Signs and their Domicile Rulers

The shaded cells represent the sign the planet ruler *rejoices* or is *happiest* in.

Triplexity	Rulers		
	Diurnal	Nocturnal	Participating
♈-♌-♊	♂	♂	♂
♉-♍-♎	♀	♂	♂ (and ♀ in ♍)
♊-♋-♏	♂	♀	♂
♋-♌-♍	♀	♂	♂

Table 1.2: Signs, their Triplexities and Rulers

The rulers of the triplexities give indications for, and decide, everything. The first triplexity ruler is the one that agrees with the chart sect (diurnal or nocturnal).

The masculine, diurnal signs are the Fire (♈-♌-♊) and Air (♊-♋-♏) triplexities and the diurnal planets are ♂, ♀, and ♂.

The feminine, nocturnal signs are the Earth (♉-♍-♎) and Water (♋-♌-♍) triplexities and the nocturnal planets are the ♂, ♀, and ♂ (with ♀ having a share when in ♍).

Dorotheus doesn't spell this out until §1.28 but in

♊, the remaining signs are called *crooked* as they rise at an oblique angle to the horizon and each take slightly less than two hours.

later sections the reader is assumed to understand these categories.

In mundane astrology, the “afflictions and distress” that effect the world are timed and indicated by the triplicity rulers of a solar or lunar eclipse. Every hour that the ☉ is eclipsed is equal to one year while every hour that the ☾ is eclipsed is equal to one month.

The sign of the solar eclipse gives indications as to who will suffer the afflictions and distress: ♊, sheep; ♈, work-horses and horses, ♌, lions, etc.

1.2 Exaltation of the Planets

Each planet has a sign and degree of *ascent* known as its *exaltation*, and another sign and degree, lying opposite, known as its *descent*<sup>1</sup>.

Planet	°	Ascent	Descent
☉	19	♊	♏
☾	3	♈	♍
♀	15	♏	♊
♂	27	♊	♏
♂	28	♈	♍
♂	15	♏	♊
♂	21	♊	♏

Table 1.3: Planet Exaltations

1.3 Ease or Difficulty of the Birth

If the ☉, ☾, and Ascendant are in masculine signs (for males) or feminine signs (for females) then the birth was

<sup>1</sup>The place of *descent* may also be referred to as a planet’s place of *depression* or *fall*.

an easy one for the mother. If you find the reverse then there is “misery and death.”

In particular, ♄ angular in a feminine sign has an intense power to make the birth slow, difficult, and unfortunate.

If ♀ is angular, especially if he is in a feminine sign, the birth will come upon the mother unexpectedly but generally it is easier because ♀ cuts.

The mother will have a difficult time if:

- the ♄ is in a crooked sign (♈,♉,♊,♋,♌,♍) and aspected by ♄ or ♀
- the ♄ is in an angle and aspected by both ♄ and ♀, who are both in crooked signs
- both ♄ and ♀ are in angles and neither the ☉ nor the ♄ aspects the Ascendant

## 1.4 Upbringing

Don’t worry for the person’s life because you see a malefic in an angle, there are conditions involving the triplicity rulers of the Ascendant that can increase and strengthen the life.

Mitigating conditions include:

- a triplicity ruler in its own term and angular or in another place where it is strong<sup>1</sup>
- all three triplicity rulers in strong places
- two triplicity rulers in strong places, preferably with the first triplicity ruler in a good place<sup>2</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>It is not clear what he means by “strong” placement; could be by sign, degrees, or good places which he calls *powerful* in §1.5.

<sup>2</sup>The *good places* are given in §1.5.



- all three triplicity rulers in strong places and square or trine each other, and its even better if they aspect the ☉ or ☽, or both
- if ♄, ♀, or both are actually in the Ascendant look to see if all three of the Ascendant's triplicity rulers are in strong places and "coming out in their light"<sup>1</sup>

If the triplicity lords of the Ascendant are in a "sign of misfortune"<sup>2</sup> check the first<sup>3</sup> triplicity lord of the Lot of Fortune. If it aspects the lot or is in a good place and aspecting the ☉ for day births, the ☽ for night births, then the person will be brought up.

Other conditions that indicate the person will be brought up are:

- ♄ in the Ascendant or in a sign that is of the same triplicity as the sign of the Ascendant
- ♄ in the 2nd place from the Ascendant
- ♄ in the 4th place with the ☽ and ♀ both in the Ascendant
- in a day chart, ♄, ♄, and ♀ in angles
- in a day chart, ♄ angular and in his own triplicity

(also see §1.7 *More On Upbringing*, §1.9 *Upbringing Again*, §1.12 *Upbringing and Livelihood*)

---

<sup>1</sup>This usually means the planet is moving from conjunction with the ☉ to its opposition and there is 15° to 120° between the two, the planet is usually said to be strongest (or in its own 'glow' or 'light') when it is 60° from the conjunction with the ☉ and moving towards its opposition.

<sup>2</sup>The places of *misfortune* are the 2nd, 3rd, 6th, 8th or 12th places from the Ascendant, they are described in §1.5.

<sup>3</sup>This is an assumption on my part as the first triplicity lord rules the first part of the life, which is when *upbringing* occurs.

### 1.5 The Superior Places

The order of the places<sup>1</sup>, according to their *superiority* or *power* for good events occurring in the person's life<sup>2</sup>, relative to each other is:

1st Ascendant

10th Midheaven

11th [*Good Daimon*]

5th Children

7th Marriage

4th Angle of the Earth

9th [*God*]

---

3rd Joy of the ☽

2nd [*Gates of Hades*]

8th Death

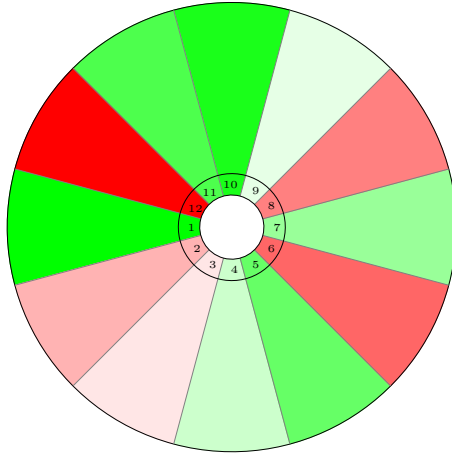
6th [*Evil Fortune*]

12th [*Evil Daimon*]

---

<sup>1</sup>Where Dorotheus does not provide a descriptive name for a place the commonly given Greek place name is listed.

<sup>2</sup>That the power of the place is related to the *good of the life* is implied by the text. The activities of the *good* places are generally those people consider to involve good events while those of the remaining houses are generally considered to involve difficult events.



**Figure 1.1:** The Superior Places

In the figure the seven *good* places are in shades of green; the bad in shades of red.

## 1.6 Power of the Seven Planets

Every planet in its own sign, exaltation, or triplicity is benefic as “what it indicates of good is strong, increasing.” This is true even of malefics as their “evil becomes lighter and decreases” when they are in their own places.

$\mathfrak{h}$  in a masculine sign<sup>1</sup> in a day chart (even though he is a diurnal planet) can cause harm but it will be less harmful if he is also in one of his own dignities. The same is true for  $\mathfrak{m}$ , a nocturnal planet, in a feminine sign in a nocturnal chart.

---

<sup>1</sup>In §1.4 we are told  $\mathfrak{h}$  (a diurnal planet) is at his worst when in a feminine sign. Here we are told he can still do harm when in a masculine sign but not as much and even less if he is in one of his own dignities. In the same section,  $\mathfrak{m}$  (a nocturnal planet) in a feminine sign is described as less harmful than a feminized  $\mathfrak{h}$ .

A planet's power *disappears* if it is within 15° of the ☉ while the ☉ is moving towards a conjunction with the planet.

A retrograde planet indicates “there is difficulty [and] misfortune” for the person and others.

## 1.7 More on Upbringing

### Good Upbringing

The person will be brought up if diurnal planets in a diurnal chart or nocturnal planets in a nocturnal chart are found in:

- one or more of the seven strong places; it is beneficial if one of them is a benefic
- the 2nd sign from the ascending sign if the planet is within 15° of the Ascendant as then “reckon its power as if it were in the ascendent”

### No Upbringing

The person may not be brought up or have a harsh upbringing if:

- the first triplicity ruler is within 15° of the ☉ or in a bad place; especially if the second triplicity ruler is with him
- both malefics aspect the ☿, especially if she is in an angle and one of the malefics is in opposition while also making an exact aspect to the Ascendant<sup>1</sup> as “this is an indication of ruin”
- the ☿ in the 7th place with no connection to a benefic and while a malefic is in an angle for “then

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes indicates it could be an aspect to the Ascendant's terms rather an exact aspect to the Ascendant's degree (CAD p.69).

the women give birth to what has no escape from ruin”

- the ♃, not in her own places, in the 4th with ♀ and ♂ or in their opposition
- one of the malefics in the Ascendant opposite the other malefic and the ♃ in the 10th or 7th

## Rejection or Exposure

The person may be cast out by his parents if:

- the ♃ is in the 4th place with ♀ and ♂ or in their opposition unless the ♃ is in her own triplicity and the benefics are trine the malefics in which case, rather than ruin, the person is brought up by strangers and sometimes they “will be a slave and will be employed and then will be miserable”
- the ♃ “between the two malefics and one them casts its rays upon it” then the person’s livelihood will be little and if the ♃ is also waning “it indicates fate and shortness of life” which he may escape if a benefic is also part of the configuration
- the ♃ is with a malefic in an angular or succedent place and is configured with a benefic and if the ☉ aspects the malefics, the father favours casting him out and thinks badly of him; if the ♃ is injured<sup>1</sup>, the mother wants to cast the person out; if both lights are injured, both parents want rid of the person
- in a diurnal chart, ♂ angular and opposing the ♃ or the ☉ while they are not in their own places; in a nocturnal chart, ♀ under the same conditions

---

<sup>1</sup>This is odd as we’ve already been told the ♃ must be with a malefic, which would be an injury; possibly it must also be harmed by the other malefic?

## Calamity

If the ☿ is in the term of a malefic without the aspect of a benefic while a malefic is in an angle there is “calamity” for the person unless the first ruler of the sect light’s triplicity aspects the ☿.

## Injury to the person and his mother

If there is no benefic in (a) an angle, (b) in the same sign as the Lot of Fortune, or (c) in a sign of the same triplicity as the Ascendant while malefics aspect the ☉, ☿, and SAN<sup>1</sup> the indications are evil.

If a benefic does not aspect the Ascendant (representing the person) or the ☿, an unfortunate condition is indicated for the person and their mother if the ☿, or worse yet, the ☿ and ♀ (as both indicate the mother) are injured.

(also see §1.4 *Upbringing* and §1.9 *Upbringing Again*, §1.12 *Upbringing and Livelihood*)

## 1.8 Masculine and Feminine Hours

The person represented by the chart will be a male if:

- the ☿ is in a masculine dodecatemoron

To determine the dodecatemoria divide the sign into 2.5° sections<sup>2</sup> with, in a masculine sign, the sections running male, female, male, female, etc. In

---

<sup>1</sup>The most recent new or full moon that occurred prior to the birth.

<sup>2</sup>Dorotheus says “two and a half days”, we are basically dividing the 30° of each sign by 12 so it has an analogy with each month of 30 days being equivalent to a sign and the 12 signs being equivalent to a year.

a feminine sign, the sections running female, male, female, etc<sup>1</sup>

- the ☉, ♃, and Ascendant are all in masculine signs
- the ☉ in the ascendant in a masculine sign, even if the hour of the birth is “double” (even)
- a masculine planet in the ascendant in a “two-bodied” masculine sign (♈, ♊), even if the hour of the birth is “double” (even)
- a masculine planet in the 1st and in the 7th, even if the hour of the birth is “double” (even)
- the ☉ and ♃, both in masculine signs, and ♄ ruling the Ascendant regardless of gender of the sign on the Ascendant

## 1.9 Upbringing Again

Also look to see if the ♃ is with or aspecting either the Lot of Fortune or the Lot of the Daimon as this is an indication the person is well brought up and has a beautiful face, fine limbs, and any easy time teething. If the ♃ has no connection with either lot then say the reverse.

(also see §1.4 Upbringing, §1.7 More on Upbringing, §1.12 Upbringing and Livelihood)

## 1.10 Is the Person and their Mother Free or a Slave

First, examine the ♃’s condition.

If the ♃ is in the 12th or 6th place and:

- the first triplicity lord of the place is in a bad place, the native is a slave, unless

---

<sup>1</sup>For more information on the *dodecatemoria* and their calculation see the Appendix §A *Dodecatemoria*.

- it is a night chart and the ☽’s second and participating triplicity lords are in good places, or
- it is a day chart and the first and second lords of the ☼’s triplicity are in good places

In which case the person is born free but his parents are poor.

If the ☽ is in the last degrees of a sign, the mother is of bad descent unless:

- ☿’s aspect removes the misery, which happens even if ☿ is badly placed<sup>1</sup>, or
- the ☽ is with ♀ in one of ♀’s domiciles in which case “the evil” disappears.

If a malefic is in one of the ☽’s angles<sup>2</sup> and ♂ (in a day chart) or ♁ (in a night chart) aspect the ☼ or ☽ without ☿ also being in aspect, the person will be a servant. And his condition may be worse if the ☽ is in a feminine sign and worse yet if ♀ is also injured.

If the ☼ and ♁ are in the 6th, 12th, 8th, or 4th then the father’s condition is unfortunate.

If the ☼ and ☽ are in the terms of benefics and aspect the ruler of the place they occupy then the parents condition is good as will be the person’s survival and up-bringing. The conditions will be even better if the ☼ or ☽ is angular or it one rules the Lot of Fortune.

If the ☽ is angular or succedent and being overcome<sup>3</sup> by a malefic, the person will be struck down even if he

---

<sup>1</sup>The wording in the original is confusing; this appears to be the author’s intent.

<sup>2</sup>If either malefic found in the 4th, 7th, or 10th place from the ☽.

<sup>3</sup>The text has “supervised”, Dykes translation has “looked down on” which he equates with *overcoming* i.e. the malefic in the 10th place from the ☽..



is free. There is destruction if the ☿ is with one malefic while there other overcomes them.

In a nocturnal chart, if the ☿ is in the 7th or 4th and in the aspect of a malefic, destitution, slavery and difficulty is indicated for the persons livelihood.

The Lot of Fortune or its ruler in another's terms in the 6th or 12th indicates service.

If the ☿ in a nocturnal chart is in a masculine sign while the Ascendant is in a feminine sign or, if in a diurnal chart, the ☼ is in a feminine sign while the Ascendant is in a masculine sign, the person will be like a slave.

Check the ☿'s, ☼'s and Ascendant's term rulers to see if they are feminine (☿, ♀ ☿) or masculine (☼ ♀, ♂)<sup>1</sup>.

The ☿ with the malefics without the aspect of a benefic indicates slavery.

A malefic in an angle or ♂ aspecting the ☿ while the ☿ is moving to conjunct ☿ indicates slavery. The same if ☿ is aspecting the ☿ while she is moving to conjunct ♂.

If the ☿ is in the end of a sign and aspected by ☿ or ♂ the person may be aborted or his birth made hard; unless ♀ or ♀ also aspect the ☿, in which case the person is born but raised by strangers.

If the first lord of the Ascendant's triplicity is cadent and opposed by the ☿ while the ☼ is in a bad place, the person's parents are slaves.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is strange for a number of reasons (1) Dorotheus does not connect the state to the condition of being free or a slave, (2) the ☿ and the ☼ do not rule any of the the most commonly used Egyptian terms, (3) ☿ is usually considered a diurnal and therefore masculine planet although Dykes says there are other instances of ☿ being deemed feminine found in Sahl and Theophilus. Although it could just be a transcription error.

## Indications from the SAN

Note the degree of the SAN<sup>1</sup> and the 1st and 2nd triplicity lords of its sign.

If the 1st lord is in a bad place and the 2nd in a good place, the person will be born into slavery but freed in later life.

If the 1st lord is in a good place and the 2nd in a bad place, the person is born free but will be reduced to poverty, contempt and service in his later years.

If both triplicity lords are bad places, the person will begin and end life as a slave or servant.

If both triplicity lords are in good places, the person will begin life free and end it free.

If a malefic is with the SAN and the other malefic is in aspect, the person “will experience his fate and evil will overcome him.”

If the SAN’s term lord is in a bad place or the 7th or the 4th the life will be lived in slavery and poverty.

If the SAN is in a bad place and aspected by malefics but it is also aspected by a benefic and its term lord is in a good place then the person’s father if of noble birth and his mother is of poor lineage.

## Escape from Slavery, Service, or Poverty

Indications that a person will be freed from any indicated slavery, service, or poverty are:

- ♃ in any angle, in any sign except ♎, regardless of being with malefics or benefics. And if ♃ aspects

---

<sup>1</sup>SAN is an acronym for *Syzygium Ante Nativatem* which refers to the syzygy, the whole-moon (conjunctive) or full-moon (preventive) immediately before birth which may also be called the *lunation* before birth.

the ♃, “the pains of slavery are completely loosened for him.”

- ♀ in an angle, free of the malefics
- ♀ in the 7th with the ♃
- the ☉, ♃, and ♀ in angles
- the ☉ and ♃ in the same triplicity
- the ♃ angular in ☿ or ♄ free of the malefics or aspected by both malefics and benefics

### Effect of Jupiter

If ♃ is with or square the Lot of Fortune the person escapes slavery but if ♃ aspects the Lot of Fortune while both are in bad places the person will be freed from slavery but will not escape servitude.

If ♃ is in the 2nd or 8th the person will experience what is like slavery and worse if ♃ is in the 6th or 12th.

#### 1.11 How many will own the person

In a day chart, if slavery is indicated, to know how many will own the person count the planets between the ☉ and the lord of the triplicity of the Lot of Fortune. In a nocturnal chart count from the ♃ instead of the ☉.

If the ♃ is above the earth count the planets between the 6th place (the sign of slaves) to the 12th place and if the ♃ is under the earth, count the planets between the 12th and the 6th.

And if any planet is in a double-bodied sign (♊, ♋, ♎, ♏) count it as two planets instead of one.

To know how many would own the father, count from the ☉ to the lord of the ☉’s triplicity, and for the mother, count from the ♃ to the lord of the ♃’s triplicity.

## 1.12 Upbringing and Livelihood

### Moon on the 3rd Day after Birth

Check the sign the ☾ is in on the third day after birth and consider:

- the place the sign occupies
- the planets aspecting the sign
- the place and condition of the sign's domicile and exaltation rulers

The person's condition is good and fortunate if:

- the places occupied are good and in the aspect of benefics

The person's condition is middling, he is "neither happy nor destitute" if:

- the domicile ruler is in a good place, not USB, or in the aspect of benefics

The person's condition is miserable if:

- the places occupied are bad and aspected by malefics
- malefics aspect the domicile ruler

### Indications from the radix Moon

The person's condition is good if:

- the dodecatemoria of the ☾ is with benefics or in their aspect<sup>1</sup>
- the ☾ is waxing and moving North<sup>2</sup> the person "attains good at the end of his life"

---

<sup>1</sup>This is implied from his comments on the dodecatemoria causing misery.

<sup>2</sup>It is not clear if this is North in latitude or North in the sense that Valens describes it under winds in Book 3.4.

- the ♃ ascending, moving from South to North, then “he attains good at the beginning of his life and at the end”
- it is best if the ♃ is waxing and ascending North as it is an indication of prosperity and virtue

The person’s condition is unfortunate if:

- the dodecatemoria of the ♃ is with malefics or in their aspect
- the ♃ is void<sup>1</sup>, there are no planets in or aspecting the Ascendant<sup>2</sup>; the person will possess “pain and hardship in the pursuit of what he needs”
- the ♃ is waxing and is ♄, ♀, or ☐ to ♂
- the ♃ is waning and is ♄, ♀, or ☐ to ♁

### Indications from the 10th Place from the Moon

If there is a benefic in the 10th place from the ♃, there is good for the person. If the benefic is in their own places then the person “attains wealth and gains in right and honesty.”

If there is a malefic in the 10th place from the ♃, the good is less and if the malefic is not in his own places then the indication is for “great harm.”

### Indications for the Parents

The ☉ and his triplicity rulers indicate the father and his end and the ♃ and her triplicity rulers indicate the

---

<sup>1</sup>There are two current ideas of what what determines if the ♃ is *Void of Course*. The most widely used interpretation is the ♃ not applying to aspect any planet within the next 30° of her travel. Others limit it to her not applying to the aspect of another planet while she moves through the sign she occupies at birth.

<sup>2</sup>Dykes has the ♃ not in or aspecting the Ascendant.

mother, her end, and the native. The lord of the 4th is also an indicator for the parents.

If the ☉ and his triplicity lords and the ☿ are in bad places then both the mother and father will have “misery and little livelihood” and that the person “will not be brought up” but harmed by his parents. If, at the same time, there is a benefic in an angle, the misery will be held off for a period equal to the benefic’s minor years.

If the ☉ is in a good place with the aspects of both malefics and benefics, it indicates a doubling of the father’s property “but also the diminution of the property” of the person. The same happens re: the mother if the ☿ is in a similar condition. And the loss will be worse if the ruler of the 4th is also harmed.

If the ☉ and/or ☿ is cadent and aspected by malefics then the father, or mother, or both are slaves, living in poverty and in need of “nourishment day by day” and if, along with this, the Ascendant ruler is also cadent “then the native is not brought up out of misery and expulsion because he is a slave or a pauper or one in need of nourishment.”

### Indications for the Father from the Sun

If the ☉ and the ☉’s first triplicity ruler are in good places then:

- wealth, praise, and fame is indicated for the father
- it is better if the ☉ is also in the terms of a benefic as it means the person will inherit from their father
- if the triplicity ruler is with a malefic there is a decrease in the father’s property and “injuries and calamities”

If the ☉ and the ☉’s first triplicity ruler are in bad places then:

- the father “is not noble and poverty and necessity have overtaken him”

If the ☉ is in a good place but the first triplicity ruler is cadent, then:

- the father “is noble, but he will not keep his property and honor”
- if the ☉ is also in the term of a malefic, his father “has no splendor because [this is] an indication of service for him” and if a malefic also aspects the ☉, there will also be illness for his father

If the ☉ is in a bad place but the first triplicity ruler is in a good place, the father increases and both the person and his father are elevated over their peers.

If the first triplicity ruler of the ☉ is in a strong place and the second triplicity ruler is in a bad place, his father is in good condition when the person is born but they do not persist; and the reverse is true if the first triplicity ruler is in a bad place and the second in a good place.

The ☉ and its first triplicity ruler in a bad place, in its “dejection” or other signs not its own, “then it indicates death in a terrible place for his father” and if, at the same time, a malefic is ☐ or in ♀, “all the property of his mother and father will be squandered.”

### Indications for the Mother from the Moon

Things are bad for the mother if:

- the ☾ is descending South, or
- in an eclipse, or
- in the terms of a malefic, or
- in its *dejection* (Fall?)

and if a malefic also aspects the ☾, it is worse.

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the terms of a benefic and any of the above conditions apply, then “the mother is noble, but ignominy and disdain and humiliation have struck her.”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the 4th “a chronic illness will strike [the] mother or she will be harmed in her reputation.”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the 4th or 7th, in the terms of a malefic, and her dispositor is cadent, she “is in slavery.”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is angular and is in  $\mathfrak{J}$ ,  $\mathfrak{Q}$ , or in  $\mathfrak{J}$  to  $\mathfrak{h}$  or  $\mathfrak{J}$ , then the person’s mother “will die a terrible death.”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  and her triplicity rulers are in bad places, and the  $\odot$  and its triplicity rulers are in good places then the mother has a bad end but not the father.

(also see §1.4 Upbringing, §1.7 More on Upbringing, §1.9 Upbringing Again)

### 1.13 Lot of the Father

Calculate the Lot of the Father, by degrees, in a day chart from the the  $\odot$  to  $\mathfrak{h}$ ; for a night chart, count from  $\mathfrak{h}$  to the  $\odot$ . Add the degrees found to the Ascendant, the result is the place of the lot.

If  $\mathfrak{h}$  is USB, use from  $\mathfrak{J}$  to  $\mathfrak{L}$  in place of  $\mathfrak{h}$  and the  $\odot$ .

If the lot ruler is in any of the good places, then the father’s condition is good; if it is in the 6th, 8th, 3rd, or 12th<sup>1</sup> his father’s condition is bad.

If the lot’s ruler is in the sign following the lot<sup>2</sup>, not aspecting<sup>3</sup> the lot, or if the ruler of the sign opposite the

---

<sup>1</sup>Probably should include the 2nd place as well.

<sup>2</sup>In the 12th sign from the lot.

<sup>3</sup>Pingree’s text omits the “not” but that would contradict what Dorotheus said about the condition of the father being good if the lot ruler is in a good place, all of which would aspect the lot.



lot is in the lot, then the person's father is not his real father.

### 1.14 Lot of the Mother

Calculate the Lot of the Mother, by degrees, in a daytime birth, from ♀ to the ☽; for a night chart, from the ☽ to ♀, and add the difference found to the Ascendant.

The parents are of different nationalities if:

- the ☉ and ☽ are both in tropical signs (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋), especially if the malefics are conjunct, square, or in opposition to them
- the lights don't aspect each other or the Ascendant
- one of the lights is below the earth, the other above with malefics
- the Ascendant is in a tropical sign with one of the lights and there are other planets with them, especially a malefic

### Separation of Parents

The ☉ or ☽ in the 7th place indicates the parents are separated and, if the light is in the terms of a malefic, the indicated parents property is squandered.

♂ or ♀ conjunct, square, or opposed to the ☉ without any aspect from the benefics indicates the father's property is squandered. If the ☽ is in the same position, the mother's property is squandered. And if the parents are separated when the person is young he may be a needy orphan.

♂ angular, especially in the 7th, with ♀ cadent and not aspecting ♀ indicates separation of the parents. The same if ♂ is in the same condition and ♀ and ♀ in the same condition as ♀.

The two lights opposed to each other across the 6th-12th axis, or both together in the 6th or 12th, indicates the parents separation.

The lot of the father and mother together in the same place indicates separation of the parents as do malefics aspecting the lots.

Separation is also indicated if the two lights do not aspect each other or the Ascendant.

“If you find the two lots, each one of them, in a sign at its term[s], and the malefics are also injuring them from the sign, then this is an indicator of the destruction of what is between the parents.<sup>1</sup>”

### The 4th Place

The ☽ and ♀ both aspecting the 4th indicates “an increase of good and a goodness of condition” for the mother.

If the ☉, ♄, and ♀ are in the 10th in opposition to the 4th “it indicates praise of the father and the goodness of his condition.”

If both the above situations occur at the same time “then judge for his two parents together good fortune and wealth and fame.”

Misfortune, misery, and slavery for the parents is indicated if ♂ and ♀ are in the 4th without a benefic or if the malefics square or oppose the 4th.

---

<sup>1</sup>Can’t make head or tails of this. Dykes has “And if you found the two Lots, each of them in a sign separated [from the other]/*in aversion*], and the infortunes also harming them both from the sign[*possibly the 4th or 7th is meant*], then that is an indicator of the corruption of what is between the parents.” I am wondering if it might mean if you find the lots in the terms of a malefic and also harmed by the same malefic.

The ☿ in the 4th indicates evil for the mother; the ☼ in the 4th, evil for the father.

### 1.15 Parent Deaths

Indications of which parent will probably die first:

- the parental lot that contains a malefic or is in its square or opposition
- ☿☐☼ from the left<sup>1</sup>, the father is indicated; if the ☿ is in a similar situation, then the mother is indicated
- ☿ in the 2nd place from the ☼ (indicates the father) of the ☿ (indicates the mother)
- the ☼ (father) or ☿ (mother) square or opposed to a strong malefic
- if both the Lot of the Mother and the Lot of the Father are in the square or opposition of malefics without the aspect of the benefics<sup>2</sup> see which of the ☼ or ☿ will first enter the 4th place by diurnal motion
- if both the lights are injured by malefics look to the SAN “as this will indicate to you whatever of that you wish”<sup>3</sup>
- if a light is below the horizon and malefics aspect the Ascendant then the parent indicated by the light will die first

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes says “That is, overcoming the ☼” although usually “overcoming” is described as on the “right”; essentially, the ☿ must be in square from the 10th from the ☼, not square in the the fourth sign from the ☼.

<sup>2</sup>The text has “but [the two lots] not aspecting any of them [the malefics]” but that makes little sens; Dykes has “and <the fortunes> not looking at them” (the lots).

<sup>3</sup>He doesn’t say which parent is indicated by the new or full ☿. New ☿, mother?

$\text{h}\text{♂}\text{♂}$  or  $\text{♂}$  overcoming  $\text{h}$  is an indication the father's property will be destroyed.

The time of death is shown by the lots. If  $\text{h}$  transits the lot and  $\text{L}$  is in an angle, the person will inherit their father's property at his death.

If  $\text{h}$  and  $\text{♂}$  transit the sign where both lights are then both parents will die.

### 1.16 Person's Inheritance

#### The Father's Property

The father's property is indicated by the  $\odot$  and  $\text{h}$ .

In a day chart, if they are both in good places, the person will inherit his father's property. He will also hold on to it if the benefics aspect the  $\odot$  alone or both the  $\odot$  and  $\text{h}$ .

If  $\text{♂}$  is  $\square$  the  $\odot$  the person will squander his inheritance.

The person will waste his father's property both before and after his father's death if the  $\odot$  is in the 6th or 12th, or,  $\text{♂}$  is in an angle and especially if, in a day chart,  $\text{h}$  is in his dejection<sup>1</sup>. The grief from the loss will be mitigated if  $\text{L}$  aspects.

The father will die a terrible death if:

- the lord of the Lot of the Father is in a bad place and in the aspect of a malefic posited in the 4th or 7th.
- the lord of the Lot of the Father in a bad place and neither the  $\odot$  nor the lord of the  $\odot$  aspecting the Ascendant

---

<sup>1</sup>Probably means  $\text{h}$  is in his Fall ( $\text{V}$ ).

Indications for the relationship between a father and son:

- ♄ overcoming ♏; the father will be miserable because of his son.
- ♄♏☉; “misery and misfortune” between the father and son
- ♏ in the triplicity of ♄; they love each other and the son will inherit his father’s property

### The Mother’s Property

The mother’s property is shown by the ♃ and ♀ and their lords.

The the ♃ and ♀ are in the west, in a bad place, and the ☉ is cadent without a good aspect to relieve the ♃, ♀, or the bad place then the person is born to parents who are poor and needy, and so is the person.

### 1.17 Number of Siblings

To know how many siblings were born before the person examine the Ascendant’s triplicity rulers and see where the stronger one falls in the chart:

- in the 1st, the person is the first<sup>1</sup> born
- in the 10th, the person is the fourth born or the first born
- in the 7th, he is the seventh child or the first
- both triplicity rulers cadent, “sometimes nothing is allotted”

If both the triplicity rulers are on the left side of the Ascendant, look at what is between the triplicity rulers and the Ascendant:

---

<sup>1</sup>Dorotheus says “the cardines indicate the beginning.”

- a malefic indicates the mother had a miscarriage or that a sibling born before the person has a birth-mark or defect
- a benefic, direct, rising from the ☉, indicates there will be more siblings than predicted
- if no planets are found in-between, the person is the first born and if they are not, it indicates the sibling born before them was a miscarriage or will die before them

If there is a planet between the Ascendant and the IC there will be a sibling born after the person and if that planet is a malefic, they will die. If there are no planets found, there are no siblings born after the person.

### 1.18 On Brothers

A person with the Ascendant or ☽ in ♋ or ♏ will have few brothers.

☿ in a term of ♂ aspecting the ☽ or the Ascendant is harmful to brothers.

If the Ascendant is in ♍, ♊, or ♋, the mother will have numerous children.

### 1.19 Lot of Brothers

To find the Lot of Brothers count (in the order of the signs) from ♏ to ♌ by day or ♌ to ♏ by night and add the difference to the Ascendant. A planet in or aspecting the lot will make clear matters concerning the brothers.

If the lot is in sterile signs (♋, ♎, ♏) “there is not good in his brothers” while if it is in ♊, ♍, or ♋, he will have numerous brothers.

♄ and ♀ aspecting the lot, even by square, indicates good things in the matter of brothers.

♂ or ♁ aspecting the lot by square or opposition injures and diminishes the brothers and sometimes indicates they will die before the person. But if the malefics aspect by trine or sextile “there is no great calamity” for the brothers.

### 1.20 Brother’s Love

To know if the brothers love each other or otherwise, look at the lord of the Lot of Brothers, if it aspects the lot by:

- △ there is love between brothers
- ◻ there is “a medium amount of love.”
- ♁ there is “enmity and separation”
- ♂ there is estrangement between them
- ♁ there is estrangement between them

### 1.21 How many siblings?

To find the Lot of the Number of Siblings<sup>1</sup>, count (in the order of the signs) from ♄ to ♄ (by night, from ♄ to ♄) and add the difference to the Ascendant. The number of planets aspecting the place of the lot gives you the number of siblings.

Indications from the planets aspecting the place are:

- |      |  |
|------|--|
| ♀, ♄ | in aspect from a good place, from feminine signs indicates sisters; in masculine signs, brothers |
|------|--|

---

<sup>1</sup>Note that *siblings* is being used here and elsewhere in place of *brothers*.

- ♄,♂,☉♄ peregrine, indicate the loss of siblings but if in their own places his siblings “will not love him and are not his friends or who have no use for him because what the malefics indicate is not complete”
- any planet** in aspect from a bad place indicates the siblings “have no good in them or have sicknesses, or that there is enmity between them, and bad and evil [are their] opinion and thought [of each other]

### Indications from the 3rd Place

If the sign on the 3rd place is double-bodied (♊, ♎, ♈, ♋) or its lord is in a double-bodied sign then the siblings are not the children of both parents.

Indications from the planets as to birth-order:

- ♄,♂ older brothers
- ♄,♂ middling brothers
- ♂ younger brothers
- ♄ older sisters
- ♀ younger sisters

### General Indications from Mars

If the 1st and 2nd triplicity rulers of ♂ are in bad places, it indicates a small number of siblings.

If one triplicity ruler is in a good place and the other in a bad place then the person has siblings “but it is inevitable that he will see their death.”



## An Example Chart

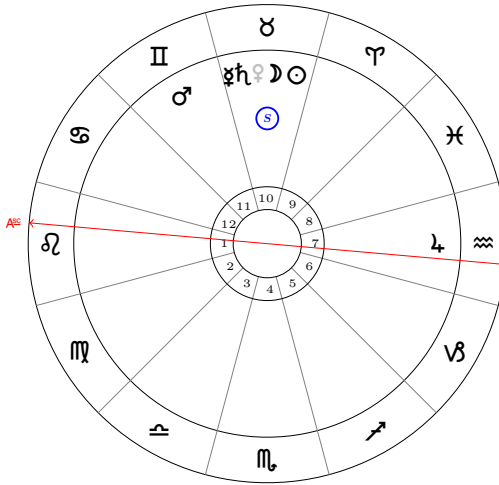


Figure 1.2: Chart 01: Man with 5 Siblings

The chart of a man with the ☉, ☾, ♂, ☿<sup>1</sup>, and the Lot of Siblings in the Midheaven in Taurus with ♂ in ♊, ♀ in ♋, and the Ascendant in ♈.

♂ and ☿ are the indicators of siblings as they are the triplicity rulers of ♂ (the general indicator of siblings). “Because they both happen to be above the earth you count from them to the ascendent, but if they were below the earth you would count from the ascendent to them.”

Predict the person will have five siblings as the two triplicity rulers are in ♈ and counting from there to the ascendent sign of ♈ gives: ♈ (1) + ♊ (double-bodied gives 2) + ♋ (1) + ♈ (1) = 5.

If both the triplicity rulers had not been in one sign it would be necessary to take the count from whichever was eastern and in a strong place, or, if both were of

<sup>1</sup>☿ is missing from the original chart, Dykes places it in the 10th, dating the chart to May 2 or 3, 29 AD JC, ≈ 11:30AM Sidon, Lebanon.

equal strength, to start the count from the day or night triplicity ruler (depending on the chart sect).

### Other Indications from the Lot and Planets

The Lot of Siblings is in a feminine sign (♊) with ♄ indicating his sister will die, as will both an older and his youngest brothers because the ☉ and ♀ are also with the lot and ♄ in ♊ but the fullest effect of these will not be felt because ♄ aspects the place<sup>1</sup>.

Some experts, in predicting the number of siblings, count the planets above the earth in a day chart or below the earth for a night chart.

If ♄ or the ☉ is with the Lot of Sibling and overcoming the ♃ by trine then the person has older brothers.

If ♀ is in the ascendent, say the person has no older brothers or if he did, they are dead.

If the ♃ is separating from ♄ in a night chart, or ♂ in a day chart, the persons older brother will die before him and he will have nothing from them other than a remembrance of their eminence.

If the ♃ is separating from ♀, the person has an older sister and he will love the acts of ♀. He will be better off, in his old age, with respect to his property and medical care, than he was in his youth.

If the ♃ is separating from ♀ the the person is not older than his siblings “and he is gentle, integral in mind and character for things, and he will be praised concerning this. Look also with this at the varieties of signs as the actualization of this will be made clear to you in them.”

---

<sup>1</sup>An example of the ☐ of ♄ being beneficial rather than harmful when he is angular and in one of his own places (he’s the participating triplicity ruler of ♊).

If the ☉ is in the ascendent there is no good for the person with respect to siblings.

If ♂ or ♀ are in the ascendent or midheaven or in the signs following the ascendent or midheaven, it indicates the worst with respect to siblings as the person may have none, or those he has do not survive, or, if they survive, they will be his enemies.

♂ in the 12th, 4th, or 7th means there is no good in the matter of siblings especially if you also find the lord of the Ascendant, or the ☽ is with ♂ or ♂ is aspecting ☿.

### Indications from the Lot of Fortune

If the Lot of Fortune and the Lot of Siblings are together the person will benefit from his siblings and inherit their property if they die before him. Say something similar if you find the ruler of Fortune with the Lot of Siblings and (at the same time) the ruler of Siblings and the ruler of the 3rd place with Fortune.

### Sibling's Death

Look at the two lots<sup>1</sup> and count from them to the body, square or opposition ♄, as it indicates when the person is most likely to see the death of his sibling or worse if ♂ aspects the place or turns stationary there. ♂ being stationary there “is a calamity” and more so if there is no aspect from ♄.

If ♄ and ♂ are in the place of the lot and aspect ☿, the death of a younger brother is indicated, if ♀, the death of a sister.

---

<sup>1</sup>Most probably the Lot of Siblings and the Lot of the Number of Siblings.

## 1.22 The Native's Fortune, Property and Illness

To discover the utmost limit of the native's fortune and status, look at the sect light and its triplicity lords.

If the 1st and 2nd lords are in good places "then his condition will not cease from the beginning of his age to the end of his life to be in excellence and elevation and wealth."

If the 1st is in a good place and the 2nd in a bad place "then his condition will be better in the beginning of his age, but will degenerate at the end of his life."

If the 1st is in a bad place and the 2nd in a good place "then it indicates middling good in his life, but this will not last in him."

If the 1st is in a bad place and the 2nd is under the earth or in a bad place, "then some misfortunes reach him and he does not have every desire, but some forbearance against calamity and grief and loss in livelihood is inevitably his."

If you find both cadent, "then this will not cease being in misery and poverty, especially if the malefics aspect these two from quartile or opposition and the malefics are in cardines; whoever is thus will not find bread to fill his belly or clothes in which to clothe himself."

If the triplicity lord is USB or in the place of **h**, "then whatever of good it indicates is not stable, and his property will not increase, and he will be more learned in meditation than he is in work."

## 1.23 Good and Evil Planets

In a bad nativity, if **4** is in an angle, "then it will drive off the evil for twelve years" but if it is in a succedent

place, “it will obstruct the calamity until it reaches a sign in which ♄ indicates calamity.”

♀ angular, “will obstruct [evil] for eight years.”

♄ angular and dominant (being a triplicity ruler of the sect light), “will obstruct [evil] for thirty years.”

♁ angular and dominant, “will obstruct [the evil] in a nativity like this for twenty years.”

♂ angular and dominant, “will obstruct [the evil] for fifteen years.”

The ☉ angular or in its own triplicity in a day chart, “will drive off the evil for nineteen years.”

The ☾ angular in a feminine sign, “will drive off the evil for twenty-five years, but in a masculine sign, for twenty-five months.”

## 1.24 Judgments (Example Charts)

Examples of judging a person’s fortune and property primarily from the placement of the sect light’s triplicity rulers.

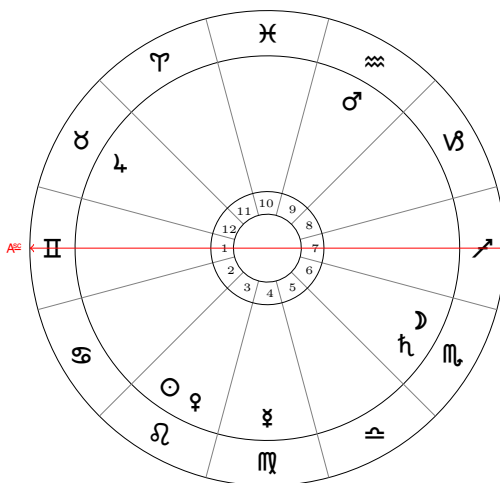


Figure 1.3: Chart 02: Needy, Poor, Miserable

The nativity is nocturnal and the triplicity rulers of the ☾ in ♍ are first ♂, second, ♀. As both are cadent, “this man should be needy, poor, not finding his daily bread, miserable. And this was in him more evident than what I told you.”

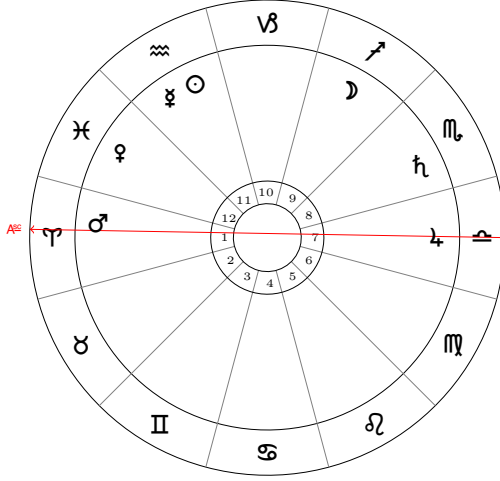


Figure 1.4: Chart 03: Wealthy, Rich, Powerful

The nativity is diurnal and the triplicity rulers of the ☉ in ♊ are first, ♀, second, ♂; both in succedent places. ♀ is in “the place of fortune, so that the native should be wealthy, rich, powerful in business affairs, great in property, seizing eminence and fortune and increasing in them.”

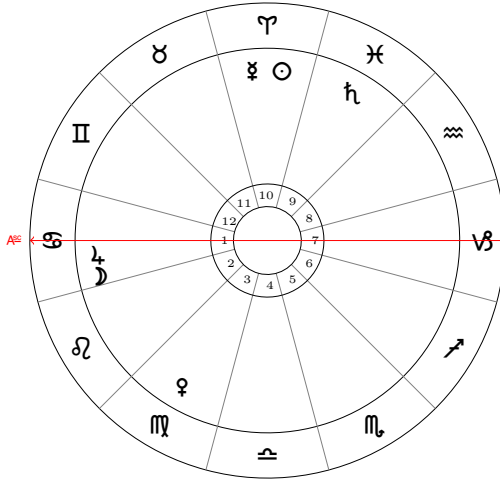


Figure 1.5: Chart 04: Praised by kings, nobles, wealthy men

The nativity is diurnal<sup>1</sup> and the triplicity rulers of the ☉ in ♐ are, first, the ☉, second, ♄, both of which are in angles and in their own exaltations “so that the native should be praised with the praise of kings and nobles and wealthy men.”

He will be “praised with the praise of kings” because ♄, the third triplicity ruler, is cadent in ♄’s sign (♈) in trine to ♄<sup>2</sup>.

<sup>1</sup>The position of ☿ was not given.

<sup>2</sup>♄ is in the 9th place which the Greeks associated with royalty.



**Figure 1.6:** Chart 04: Eminent, powerful, praised

The nativity is nocturnal and the triplicity rulers of the ♎ in ♈ are, first, ♂, second, ♀, third, the ♎. As all three are angular “this man is mighty in eminence, powerful in leadership so that crowns of gold and silver are placed on him and he is praised.”





Figure 1.7: Chart 05: Poor, unfortunate

The nativity is nocturnal and the triplicity rulers of the ☾ in ♎ are, first, ☿, second, ♄, third, ♀. As the first and second rulers are cadent near the angle under the earth “the man will be needy with respect to property” but because the third ruler, ♀, is with the ☾ in an angle “he will have the closest thing to living out [his] days in poverty except that he will have the danger of the hand of misfortune.”<sup>1</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes translates this as “But because ♀ was in charge of some of this native, and he is with the ☾ in a stake, he will have the minimum of things, roughly what he is paid [with] daily, [but] having no importance [and] without a cessation of tribulation.” (CAD 1.26.12)



**Figure 1.8:** Chart 06: Wealthy, an evil end

The nativity is diurnal and the triplicity rulers of the ☉ in ♊ are, first, the ☉, second, ♀, and third, ♀. As all three are in good places “this man will abound in gold and silver” but he will have an “evil end” because ♀ is the first triplicity ruler of the 4th “from which the matter of the end and the situation of death are known” and ♀ is cadent in the sign of calamity<sup>1</sup>.

---

<sup>1</sup>The 12th place.



Figure 1.9: Chart 07: Noble family but raised in poverty

The nativity is nocturnal and the triplicity rulers of the ♄ in II are, first, ♀, second, ♄, third, ♃. The first and second are cadent, indicating “poverty and indigence, and he will be beseeching all his days, but he will eat in misery...but since ♃ and ♀ are in cardines they indicate that he will be of noble lineage, but that he will be brought up and will grow up in houses of slavery, and he will curry favor with [his] brothers and nobles and will become acquainted [with them], but he will fail because of the evil effect of the lords of the ♄’s triplicity.”

♄ “indicates the loss of the property of his father and its dispersal in [all] directions”<sup>1</sup>

## 1.25 Excellence of Fortune

Indications of an increased fortune:

<sup>1</sup>Dykes, based on Pingree’s timing for the chart, puts ♄ in the 2nd “harming the native’s assets” but I believe the original also shows harm as ♄, ruler of the 8th of inheritance in the 5th (risks) could indicate a sudden (♄ exalted) loss (♄) of the father’s assets (♄ sextile ♄, ♄) possibly due to his brothers (3rd) stealing them.

- triplicity ruler of the sect light in a good place in  $\text{♄}$ ,  $\text{♅}$ ,  $\Delta$ , or  $\square$  the  $\text{♁}$
- Asc, MC, and 2nd place rulers not malefic, angular or succedent, “in their places with benefics” then the person “will possess fortune, eminence, commendation, praise, and a good livelihood

Indications of a middling fortune:

- a benefic in its domicile, exaltation, or triplicity, not USB or retrograde, with its triplicity ruler aspecting the ascendent but not the  $\text{♁}$
- rulers of the Asc, MC, and 2nd neither all in good or bad places

Indications of a bad fortune:

- the triplicity ruler of the sect averse to the ascendent,  $\text{♁}$ , the sect light and its dispositor, especially if  $\text{♄}$ ,  $\text{♀}$ , and  $\text{♁}$  are not in these places<sup>1</sup> as it “is more harmful and worse” and indicates the person will not survive especially if  $\text{♄}$  or  $\text{♂}$  are found there
- rulers of the Asc, MC, and 2nd all cadent
- rulers of all four angles (Asc, MC, 7th, 4th) and all four succedent (2nd, 8th, 11th, 5th) houses cadent with no aspect to the  $\text{♁}$  by night or  $\text{☉}$  by day, the person “will be needing nourishment for his belly, and it will be worse for him if a malefic is in one of the cardines<sup>2</sup>”

---

<sup>1</sup>Ascendant, place of  $\text{♁}$ , or sect light?

<sup>2</sup>Not sure the depicted situation is possible.  $\text{♂}$  rules  $\text{♄}$  and  $\text{♅}$ , which are six signs apart, so if one is cadent the other must be on an angle, and  $\text{♂}$  a ruler of an angle; if he was angular the condition of all angular rulers being cadent would fail. A similar problem arises with  $\text{♄}$ , if  $\text{♄}$  is on an angle,  $\text{♅}$  must be cadent and if  $\text{♅}$  is on an angle,  $\text{♄}$  must be succedent, in either case, if  $\text{♄}$  is angular it negates the condition that all rulers of angular and succedent places be cadent.

## 1.26 Magnitude of Fortune

Examine the distance of the triplicity ruler of the sect light from the angles using equal (oblique ascension) degrees and judge the magnitude of the fortune according to the following:

- 0-15° the person “will be most perfect in fortune and property”
- 15-30° good fortune and property, “the nearer to the degree of the cardine, the higher it is for his rank in eminence and fortune”
- 30-45° the person “will not be known,...and middling in property and fortune”
- 45°+ the person “will be needy [and] miserable”

“[You] should have these degrees in [the rising-time of] the ascendants because degrees are equal, thirty [to a sign], but the ascendants are not equal because some of them are crooked and some straight. And the crooked ones are quicker in rising, the straight ones slow in rising; and their rising-times in every region and clime is not the same because the region of the vicinity of the North is long and square while the vicinity of the South is low [and] excessive[?].”

There is no good or pleasure for the person in his property, even though he thinks it might be good and will increase, if the triplicity rulers of the ☉, by day, are in bad places and those of the ☾ are found in good places [*the opposite for a night birth?*].

If the benefics “have ameliorated” [*are connected to?*] the ascendant and midheaven but there are malefics in the 7th without the aspect of benefics, the person “will be well known [and] good in [his] condition, [but] then will fall from his fortune and his property quickly.”

If the malefics are angular, the benefics succedent, and the ☽ is separating from the malefics and moving to conjunct benefics, the person “will be at the beginning of their life despised [and] in disgrace, then they will attain property and fortune and joy.”

If the [*triplicity*] rulers of both the lights are in bad places look to the Lot of Fortune.

### Lot of Fortune

By day, count from the ☉ to the ☽ in the order of the signs and add the result to the Ascendant. By night, count from the ☽ to the ☉. Judge according to location of the lot, its ruler, and the aspects they are involved in.

If the lot is aspected by the sect light's sect mates “then this is a good testimony with regard to fortune and property” but if the lot is aspected by planets contrary to the chart sect “this his livelihood is difficult and he will attain property after delay and despair.”

### BAD INDICATIONS:

If the lord of the lot is cadent, or in a bad place, or not aspecting the lot, or out of sect or invisible in the west, or not aspecting the sect light, or in its dejection [*opposite its own domicile*] while not receiving an aspect from the benefics “then judge for him [the native] calamity and misfortune in [his] condition,” especially if the first triplicity ruler of the sect light is in a similar condition.

If the lot and its lord are in the 6th or 12th, USB, or aspected by malefics.

By day, ♂ conjunct, square or opposed to the lord of the lot.

The lord of the lot USB “has no power to grant good.”

If the lord of the lot, ♄, and ♀ are cadent it is a harmful indication and worse if the ☽ does not aspect

the benefics. If at the same time the malefics are angular or succedent then the person “will fall upon misfortunes and he will be injured according to that.”

#### MIDDLING INDICATIONS:

If the lord of the lot is afflicted but eastern benefics in good places aspect it, the Ascendent and the ☽ the person will be “middling with respect to property and livelihood because:

- ♄ in a good place “always indicates...good from nobles and mighty people and from well known work”
- ♀ in a good place “indicates benefit because of women”
- ♁ in a good place “indicates benefit because of commerce and science and calculation” and if mixed with ♄ the person “will be a confident of kings and bands [of people]

If the first triplicity ruler does not aspect the lot but the second one does, then some of the person’s property “will be squandered and some will remain.”

If both the lots triplicity rulers are averse to it while it receives aspects from both benefics and malefics “then his livelihood is a mixture of good and bad.”

#### GOOD INDICATIONS:

If the lord of the lot is in the same sign as the lot or in the 5th, the person is “happy and wealthy” and it is even better if the lord aspects the lot.

“The best that is [possible] is if ♄ witnesses the lord of the lot of fortune in aspect, and it witnesses ♄ or the ☉ by day<sup>1</sup> and by night witnesses ♂ or ♀ or the ☽ or ♁<sup>2</sup>; everything one considers will be good.”

---

<sup>1</sup>These three are sect mates.

<sup>2</sup>The ☽, ♀, and ♂ are sect mates; ♁ appears to be treated as one as well.

“The best that is [possible] is if the lord of the lot of fortune is in its house or triplicity or exaltation or terms.”

If the lord of the lot is in a good place while being aspected by benefics that are also in good places, the person “will be one of the kings and the free-born, greedy for righteousness, and he will be one of the mighty nobles” but he “will fall from his fortune” if the malefics witness the lot or the benefics.

If the lot of Fortune is in a good place and in the terms of a benefic while being aspected by a benefic the person “will acquire property from his own property and affluence.”

If both the lot’s triplicity rulers are averse but a benefic aspects the lot the person will have “a good livelihood from strangers together with praise and commendation.”

### Indications from the Malefics

If ♄ or ♂ is “in a sign of property,” [11th?] especially in the 2nd, “it indicates a fall from property and status” unless their sect condition is good.

The same if they are in the 4th, especially if they are opposed to each other with no aspect from ♄ as “flight or a terrible death or hard fall” is indicated.

If ♂ is in the 11th the person “will fall from his property...as destruction and weakness” are indicated while a benefic in the 11th indicates “the acquisition of property unexpectedly.”

### 1.27 The Decline of Status

A “fall from fortune and property” is indicated if ♄ and the ☽ are together in an angle; if ♂ aspects them “it will be a disaster.” If ♄ is with them “the property and



fortune will remain for some time, but after that will decline<sup>1</sup>.”

## 2nd Place

A malefic in the 2nd place or throwing its opposition or square to it indicates a “decline in property and livelihood.”

The condition of the ruler of the 2nd gives indications as to the extent of the decline:

- bad if the ruler is a malefic in a bad place
- middling if the ruler is a benefic in a bad place
- “sometimes the misery is diminished” if the ruler is a benefic in a good place in the aspect of a malefic
- if the ruler is in a bad place, harming the 2nd or other malefics harm the 2nd then the person will be “always anxious about [their] livelihood and have little joy, [but are] filled with grief and misery and misfortune and calamity, and they seek everything in misery and suffering and little profit, so that [even] if it is the nativity of a king, his money will be spent on inferior thing[s].”

If the 2nd place is in relatively good condition, the ♃ will enhance that good if she is waxing, in a good place aspecting the 2nd, trine the ☉ and unaspected by ♀, making the person “well known, mighty in his leadership and work in cities and the service of kings, a confidant of them, [and] influential because of this.”

But if the 2nd is in bad condition and the ♃ is waning then the condition is worsened further and the person will

---

<sup>1</sup>The text adds “even if ♃ is aspecting” but that makes little sense as we’ve already been told ♃ must be in the angle with ♎ and ♀.

“not present his management in a favorable light nor will they have praise.”

The manner of the disaster is given by the ruler of the 2nd:

- ♀ as a result of the person’s reputation among women
- ♂ due to “a book or calculation”
- ♂ due to the action of a noble, a king, or the government
- ♂ because of a violent act, anger, thieves, or fire
- ♂ due to “mature men and slaves”, from “one who is free...with no commendation or praise,” or from someone whose life is a misery and full of misfortune, or “with respect to a building” or funeral home
- ☉ due to his father or his wife or the mother’s husband or to debt
- ♂ from his mother or her relatives or because of his father’s wives

## Lot of Livelihood

The Lot of Livelihood is taken from the lord of the 2nd to the 2nd place [*cusp?*] and projected from the Ascendant. The condition of the livelihood is indicated by the condition of the lot and its lords, their location and aspects.

- good if the lot’s ruler is in a good place in the aspect of benefics
- wealth and riches if the lot’s ruler is an angular benefic in its “own place”<sup>1</sup>. If the ruler is not rising from the ☉ (or will not rise within 7 days) the

---

<sup>1</sup>Not clear if this is limited to domicile or includes exaltation, triplicity, or term.

person will be rich but not famous or known for his wealth

- great misery if the lord is a malefic in the aspect of another malefic
- the lot in a good place and the lot's ruler rising, the wealth lasts for a long time
- the lot in a good place but the lot's ruler USB, what the lot indicates only remains for a little while
- if the lot is in a bad place the person's livelihood will not increase or be much to speak of

“If you find the planets retrograde in a nativity in which the planets are strong, then he will be distressed, a coward. If it is thus in a bad nativity, then his condition [tends] toward deterioration<sup>1</sup>.”

RETROGRADE

### Benefics Angular or Succedent

If ♄ is in an angle or succedent place, even in a bad nativity, any injury indicated by malefics “becomes insignificant and the misfortunes dissolve; even if [*the person*] does not attain a good livelihood, yet he will achieve something because of the position of ♄” and similarly for ♀ except its effect for good will not be as strong except “in the matter of women, there will be seen for him some participation in livelihood and pleasure.”

If the benefics are also in their own places “they indicate good and beauty in cities and groups of men because many are his acquaintances and friends, and sometimes his enemy will turn to agreeing with him so that they will become friends with him, especially if these two planets are in their places aspecting” the chart's sect light “because this increases their strength and their efficacy and their steadfastness.”

DELINEATION  
NOTE

---

<sup>1</sup>Not clear if he is talking about the planets connected to the lot or of planets in general.

## Malefics Angular or Succedent

If “♄, the murderous one, or ♁, the destroyer” are angular or succedent they “indicate the severance of [*the person's*] upbringing, and that, even if the work of the native is good among men, all will not be grateful to him nor will they praise him, but one whom he did not harm in anything will treat him as an enemy until he shall see from the generality of men grief and sorrow. If he is a king, then his people and his city will be destroyed for him and will fall into discord and quarrel[s] and necessity. Similarly predict in the case of middling and inferior nativities because the sons of his paternal uncle and his kinfolk will treat him as an enemy, and he also will not love anyone of them.”

If ♁ is angular or succedent then the person “will be reflective and anxious, ugly, malicious, [and] haughty to himself and those who mingle with him.”

If ♄ is angular or succedent then the person will be insolent, “a laborer insignificant in his thought and reflection.”

Both ♁ and ♄ are less harmful if ♃ or ♀ aspect them.

Look to see which planet will be the first after birth to reach the Ascendant or ♃ as it will most clearly indicate “the matter of fortune and [*the person's*] property and what the extent is.”

### 1.28 Sign Gender, Direction, Sect, Triplicity Rulers

♄-♌-♈ masculine, eastern, diurnal

☉ rules by day

♃ rules by night

- $\mathfrak{h}$  associates with the  $\odot$  and  $\mathfrak{L}$   
 $\mathfrak{S}-\mathfrak{M}-\mathfrak{V}$  feminine, northern, nocturnal  
 $\mathfrak{F}$  rules by day  
 $\mathfrak{D}$  rules by night  
 $\mathfrak{M}$  associates with  $\mathfrak{F}$  and the  $\mathfrak{D}$ , “while  $\mathfrak{F}$  has a share in  $\mathfrak{M}$ ”  
 $\mathfrak{H}-\mathfrak{A}-\mathfrak{W}$  masculine, western, diurnal  
 $\mathfrak{h}$  rules by day  
 $\mathfrak{F}$  rules by night  
 $\mathfrak{L}$  associates with  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{F}$   
 $\mathfrak{S}-\mathfrak{M}-\mathfrak{H}$  feminine, southern, nocturnal  
 $\mathfrak{F}$  rules by day  
 $\mathfrak{M}$  rules by night  
 $\mathfrak{D}$  associates with  $\mathfrak{F}$  and  $\mathfrak{M}$

“The first book is finished. Praise to God, the grantor of fortune to whom He wishes of His servants because of his excellence, and Who removes misfortune from whom He wishes of His servants because of his faith, and Who is generous, beneficent, just, [and] compassionate. May his blessing be upon His prophets whom He has chosen and [upon] all of His messengers.”

*In the name of God, the merciful and compassionate, to Whom I resort.*

*This is the second book of Dorotheus which he wrote on marriage and children and judgments of the planets. The beginning of its beginning is from marriage. He said:*

### 2.1 Marriage

#### Indications from Venus

- ♀’s triplicity rulers, visible and direct, with ♀, or angular or succedent or in trine to her gives good indications for marriage
- if ♀’s triplicity rulers are cadent or in bad places, “corrupted” or USB then it is unlikely the native will marry or that he will marry disgraced women or one very old or very young
- if ♀’s triplicity rulers are in bad condition but ♀ is with a benefic planet, both being in good condition, then the wife will be agreeable but if the triplicity rulers are between ♀ and the benefic “they indicate disaster and disgrace because of women and anxiety and grief because of them<sup>2</sup>.”
- ♀ with ♄ in a good place indicates marriage to an agreeable wife
- in a diurnal chart, if ♀ is cadent and aspected by ♄ and ♂ while her triplicity lords are in the mid-heaven marriage to a well-known (♄ indicates fame) whore who brings disgrace on the man is indicated

---

<sup>2</sup>Sense of the passage is that ♀, the benefic, and one or more triplicity rulers are together in a bad place.

- if ♀ is with, overcome by, or opposed by a malefic the person's life "will revolve in grief and misery because of women, especially if the malefic is the ☿"
- ☿ in ☿ or ♌, aspected by ♄ indicates marriage to a slave girl, or servant, or stranger
- ♄ with ♀ "predict...intercourse with a praiseworthy woman" and if ♄ aspects the ☿ the intercourse is "with his mistress or his lady or the wife of one of the nobles" and if ♄ or ♂ also aspect the ☿ ("which is the king of the night"), say the same if the nativity is that of a woman<sup>1</sup>
- ♀ USB in the 1st or 10th and ♂ in an angle or with the lot of wedding, indicates marriage to someone "of the lowest [class], a stranger and a pauper" and if ☿ and ♀ both aspect the lot of wedding, marriage to "a singer or dancer" is indicated

### Indications from the 7th Place

If malefics aspect the 7th and the ruler of the 7th is cadent or in the aspect of malefics or in a bad position then, the person will suffer injury from the ruler because of:

- ♄ the father, mature men, or the dead
- ♄ kings, wealthy men, or a "decree of the city"
- ☿ argument and talk, or marriage to a woman who'd once been a concubine and was stolen away by thieves
- ♂ a shameful and disgraceful marriage and if ☿ is with ♂ the person "will kill his wife with his own hand and [her] blood will stick to him" and if ♂ is with ♀ "the bride's dowry is damaged, and she will be furious with him"

---

<sup>1</sup>Presumably the person, being a woman, will sleep with her husband or the husbands of noble women.

## 2.2 The Lot of Wedding (Man's)

The Lot of the Wedding (*[Marriage]*) is counted from ♄ to ♀ by day, the reverse by night, and projected from the Ascendant. Those planets in the lot or square to it become “the indicator of the wedding.”

If a malefic or an angle of the lot falls in the 6th or 12th then there will be grief and little benefit from the marriage.

## 2.3 Lot of Wedding (Women)

The Lot of Marriage for women from ♀ to ♄ by day, the reverse by night, added to the Ascendant. Planets in the the lot or square to it become “the indicator” of the marriage.

If ♄ is the indicator the women will marry a number of men in succession and “play the whore with men.”

If ♄ rules the lot and is in the 7th it indicates she will marry an older relative. If the woman is a slave or servant then she marries her master.

If ♄ rules the lot, she marries a man “that will not be known” who has a ♄ profession.

If ♄ rules the lot, she marries a man who is known, is famous in the towns and cities.

If ♀ rules the lot, there will be a marriage with “joy from wine.”

If ♄ rules the lot, the marriage will be made with deceit and quarrelling, especially if ♄ aspects.

## Indications from Venus

♀ in a bad place in the charts of men or women indicates a “disgraceful marriage.” If a malefic aspects ♀ its malice



is mitigated if ♄ also aspects ♀.

♄'s aspect of ♀ in a man's chart indicates benefits from women; in a woman's chart, benefits from men.

If ♀ is in a two body or two figured sign then the person will have more than one marriage.

♀ and ♂ in mutual reception by domicile or ♂ with, square, or opposed to ♀ indicates, for the person, "disgrace, debauchery and destruction."

If ♀ is with ☿ and ♂ the person "will have no stability in marriage, but he will rejoice in this woman one time, in that woman another time." If they are in the midheaven or if ♀ is in the midheaven and aspected by ☿ and ♂ the man will be one who befriends women<sup>1</sup> If the planets aspecting ♀ are eastern his befriending will be public. ♄ aspects one of ♀, ☿, or ♂ at the same it mitigates the harm done to the woman. If ♀'s triplicity rulers are in the midheaven "her debauchery will occur publicly and with renown."

If ♄ and ♀ are both in bad (cadent) places then "disgrace, debauchery, and a bad reputation are indicated."

If ♀'s first triplicity lord is in a good place and the second in a bad place it indicates then the women's condition is good in the beginning but worse in the second part of life<sup>2</sup>

## 2.4 Lot of Marriage

### Indications for Marriage

- ♀'s triplicity ruler in its own place

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes says he "will be of those befriending the women of [other] men" (p123).

<sup>2</sup>Dorotheus assigns the three triplicity lords to three stages of life: beginning, middle, end.

- ♀ in one of her own places indicates a marriage that will “abound in children”
- the ruler of the lot of marriage “rejoicing in its light<sup>1</sup>, aspecting its own place while the benefics aspect it, and its place is strong in a cardine or what follows a cardine, then this native will marry a good woman with no blemish in her, virtuous, praiseworthy in this, and he will be noble in his condition and his benefit”. The benefit, as shown by the ruler, is from:

♄ nobles

♁ the spouse’s paternal inheritance or a freed slave

♂ violent deeds or the works of a martial man

♊ calculation and words

♀ praise, women and females

- if ♊ is the ruler of the lot marriage and it is in a bad place while a benefic is in or aspects that place then the person will marry a virtuous wife and good wife but he “will be anxious and unhappy.” If ♊’s dispositor is in a good place the “misery and misfortune because of women” will pass or they will “attain joy and profit” because of it
- ♀ in ♌, indicates more than one marriage, especially if other planets aspect the place
- ♀ in the 7th (an angle) the person will marry but “it indicates injury and misery and calamity because of women and that he will have little stability with them” and he will have intercourse with servants, poor and needy women, and strangers.

---

<sup>1</sup>The planet is diurnal, in a day time chart, above the horizon in the same hemisphere as the ☉, or, it is nocturnal, in a night chart, in the hemisphere above the horizon which does not include the ☉.

- ♀ in the 4th indicates marriage but with grief due to the wife and child dying and it is worse if ♀ is in a cardinal sign, especially ☿ or ♄, as it indicates a strong desire for intercourse with disgraced women and whores and debts because of this
- ♀ with ♀ or ♀ in the terms of ♀ while ♀ aspects her, the person will marry a widow or an older woman or one who does not care for him or an insignificant or disgraced woman and the same applies in a woman's chart with respect to a husband and children
- ♀ with ♂ or in in the terms of ♂ while ♂ aspects then the spouse will be an adulterer and there will be grief due to a lack of children through barrenness or sterility
- ♀ with ♄ combust indicates an obscure marriage and the person will marry a widow whose child-bearing years are over
- ♀ with the ♄ in ☿ or ♂, in the aspect of ♄, the person marries a female relative
- ♀ in a bad place ☿♄, or ♀ ☐ or ♀ the ♄, indicates harm to the marriage and if two are angular they indicate marriage to a sister or close female relative
- ♀ and the ♄ together in the 4th in the aspect of ♄ indicates marriage to a relative and children in their later years
- the ruler of the lot of marriage in the lot, aspecting the lot, or aspecting the ♄ indicates marriage to a relative, possibly a niece or nephew
- ♀ and ♀ in the Ascendant in one of ♂, ♌, ♄ or ♎ indicates sex with a daughter or older sister but if

the ♃ is square to them, the sex is with a maternal aunt; if ♂, rather than the ♃ is square them, then he will marry a woman but lose his property because of her and if it is the chart of a woman, she is a lesbian

- the ruler of the lot of marriage in the 7th place from the lot while the ruler of that place is in the lot indicates the person “will keep quiet about their marriage[s] and will have intercourse with women secretly, then they will marry them after that and they will have children”

### Indications against Marriage

The lot of marriage ♀ or ♀<sup>ASC</sup> or in a bad place or if ♀ is in a masculine sign in the eastern hemisphere the person will be without a woman for his entire life because ♀ is a nocturnal planet who rejoices in the western hemisphere and prefers feminine (nocturnal) signs. Diurnal planets rejoice in the eastern hemisphere and prefer masculine (diurnal) signs.

If ♀’s triplicity rulers do not aspect ♀ or the mid-heaven, “then men will have no pleasure in marriage.”

The person will never marry if the triplicity rulers of the lot aspect neither the lot nor ♀ nor the midheaven.

If ♀’s triplicity ruler is in the last degrees of a sign or in the terms of a malefic or in the 4th or not in its own place or is aspected by malefics then the person will never marry.

If ♀ is in a bad place in the aspect of ♄ with ♄ aspecting neither the place nor ♄, then the person will never marry but “he will have intercourse with those who are disgraced and in whom there is no good.”

If ♀ and ♂ are in the other's house or term or if they are conjunct, square or opposed to each other it indicates "debauchery and wickedness" and if they are in the western hemisphere it will be secret but if in the eastern hemisphere the debauchery will be public and if the ☉ aspects there will be infamy and if with this ♀ rules the lot of marriage and is located in the 6th or a quadrupedal sign while the lot of marriage is also in a quadrupedal sign and injured, the person will not marry young or if they do it will not last as these usually work their lives away without marriage and if the ruler of the lot of wedding is in a good place "he will have intercourse with a sick woman, or a stranger who has no one, and trouble and injury will come upon him because of the"

### Other Indications

- ♀ peregrine or in a tropical (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋) sign with or in the aspect of the ☽ or if ♄ aspects, will be willing to pay for sex
- the ruler of the lot of marriage USB or under the earth while it aspects the lot indicates "intercourse with whores and slave girls or he will have intercourse with one with whom a multitude of men has had intercourse"

### 2.5 How many wives will he marry?

The number of planets between ♀ and the midheaven indicate the number of wives but "wherever you find ♄, then know [his] coldness and distance; wherever you find ♂, [his] death unless a benefic aspects it." If ♀ is cadent from the midheaven, the man has little constancy toward women.

For women, count the number of planets between the midheaven and ♂, unless ♂ is in the midheaven, then

count to ♋. If ♊ is in the 7th the woman has little constancy toward her husband.

The Lot of Happiness and Wedding is counted from ♍ to the degree of the 7th (the reverse by night) and projected from the Ascendant. If the lord of the lot is in a bad place and ♍ is USB and aspected by malefics the person will never marry. If a malefic is in the lot or aspects the lot the person will marry disgraced women and one from whom there is no good.

The wedding is timed by a transit of ♋ or ♍ to the square, opposition, or trine of the lot unless ♎ is also square or trine the lot, in which case the marriage will not occur or, if it does, it not last long.

Marriage is possible whenever ♋ transits radix ♍. And sometimes a ♎ transit, if he is well-placed and connected with the lot in the radix, can time a marriage, especially if ♋ aspects him.

If multiple wives are indicated, marriage can occur whenever ♍ transits or aspects her own house but the marriage will be neither stable nor suitable. The same if ♍ and ♊ are in aspect.

The marriage partners suit each other and are in agreement if:

- both the man and woman have their Ascendants in the same angle, or
- either one has a light in the ascendant or midheaven, or
- the ♎ in one chart is in the place of ♍ in the other or vice versa especially if the two ♎'s are in trine
- a light in one chart is in the same sign as a benefic in the other's chart
- both have all their benefics in angles

- each have their lot<sup>1</sup> in the same sign

Incompatibility or problems are indicated if:

- the sign occupied by a malefic in one chart is the same as the sign occupied by the ☿ in the other chart indicates “injury and little agreement” between the couple

## 2.6 Lot of Wedding by Day or Night

The Lot of Wedding is from the ☉ to the ☿ (from night, the ☿ to the ☉) projected from ♀.

♄ square or opposed to the lot indicates marriage.

If the lot opposes the Ascendant, or is in the 4th aspected by malefics, or if the triplicity ruler of ♀ (in a man’s chart) or ♂ (in a woman’s chart) is in the 4th or 7th, then, the spouse will die.

♀ in the 4th or 7th in a man’s chart not only indicates the spouse’s death but also the man’s “smallness of...constancy toward women.”

♀ western with or aspected by a malefic, in a man’s chart, also indicates the wife will die.

In a man’s chart, ♄ in the 10th or 8th aspecting ♀ in the 6th or 12th indicates marriage to a good woman who will die, causing “fear and weeping and anxiety” for the man.

“But your consideration concerning the time of their [the women’s] death [should] be as I told you in the matter of the parents (§1.15) and brothers (§1.19-21).”

---

<sup>1</sup>Not sure if this means the Happiness & Wedding lot or the Lot of Fortune. Dykes, in a footnote to 2.5, says it refers to the Lot of Spirit.

## 2.7 Gender Tendencies

Indications a man will prefer men to women:

- ♀ in ♀ or ♀ and ☿ in the 2nd, 8th, 6th, or 12th
- the lot of wedding angular with ☿ in a masculine sign
- ♂ in ♀ or ♀ and ☿ in ♀ or ♀
- ♂ □ or ♀ ☿
- ♀ in ♀, ☿ ♀, or ♀, USB with ♀ or ♂ or being overcome by a □ of ♀ or ♂<sup>1</sup>
- ♀ in ♀ or ♀ and ♀ in ☿ or ♀ in the 4th, 6th, 7th, or 12th indicates effeminacy
- ♀ cadent or in the 2nd or 8th while ♀ or ♂ are angular in feminine signs indicates effeminacy particularly if the lights are in feminine signs or one of the lights is in a feminine sign and aspected by ♀ or ♂

Indications men or women will prefer those of their own sex:

- ♀ in the 7th opposite the ♀ in the ascendent, men will prefer men, women will prefer women especially if ♀ is in ♀, ♀, ♀, ♀, ♀, or ♀ and particularly if ♀ or ♂ aspect ♀ or ♀ is USB
- ♀ or ♂ in ♀, ☿, ♀, ♀, or ♀ and the lot of illness is with one of them in a feminine sign in a woman's chart or in a masculine sign in a man's chart

Indications as to a woman's sexual tendencies:

---

<sup>1</sup>A planet is "overcome" when it is in the square of another planet that is in the 10th sign counted from its sign position e.g. a planet in ♀ is overcome by planets in ♀, a planet in ♀ is overcome by planets in ♀.



- $\text{D}$  in  $\text{O}$ ,  $\approx$ , or  $\text{X}$  and  $\text{♂}\text{♂}\text{♀}$  indicates “the woman will be notorious for adultery especially if”  $\text{♀}$  is the 1st or 10th
- both lights in masculine signs and  $\text{♀}$  angular in a masculine sign and one of the three square or opposed to the other
- if both lights are trine to their rulers in a woman’s chart “then [these] women will have much intercourse with men and a great number of men will have intercourse with them”

## 2.8 Children

If  $\text{L}$ ’s 1st and 2nd triplicity rulers are together in a good place, rising from the  $\text{☉}$ , then the person will have, and benefit from, children.

If one of the rulers is in a good place and the other in a bad place the person will have children “but misery and lamentation and weeping will reach him because of them.” And the timing is shown as usual, by the first part of life being given to the 1st triplicity ruler, the 2nd part of life to the second triplicity ruler.

If both triplicity rulers are angular and USB then the person will have no children, especially if  $\text{L}$  is cadent and USB<sup>1</sup>.

## 2.9 Number of Children

### Indications from the Moon and Venus

If the  $\text{D}$  and  $\text{♀}$  are in  $\text{♋}$  or  $\text{♌}$  or their triplicities ( $\text{♍}$ ,  $\text{X}$ ,  $\text{O}$ ,  $\text{♎}$ ), the one in the “better position” becomes the

---

<sup>1</sup>Possible if  $\text{L}$  and its triplicity rulers are all are within 15° of the  $\text{☉}$  and in neighbouring signs.

indicator of children. If they are not in these signs use ♃ as the indicator.

If the indicator is in the midheaven, ascendant, or Fortune the person will have children while they are young.

If the indicator is in the 2nd, 8th, 4th, or the lot of wedding then the person will have children in his middle or later years.

### Indications from Jupiter

If the indicator of children is ♃ and he is in a good place but USB, the person “will have children but they will not live.”

Identify which of ♃’s triplicity rulers is strongest. If it is in the 10th the person will have one child or four. If it is in the 7th then the person will have seven children or one, especially if ♃ is the sign on the 7th.

If the triplicity ruler is in the 9th or 3rd, count the number of signs between it and the Ascendant and that will be the number of children. Modify the number by:

- adding to it the number of planets in the signs counted
- increasing it if ♃ and ♀, are in the signs counted
- if one of the signs is double-bodied (♊,♊,♋,♋), double the count found from it
- if ♃ or ♂ are in the signs counted and those signs are in good places they increase the number of children except the extra child will be expelled, especially if the malefic is in the 7th or 4th.
- if ♃ or ♂ are in the signs counted and those signs are in bad places, a child will die

### 2.10 Lot of Children

To find the lot of children count from ♄ to ♁ by day, or from ♁ to ♄ by night, and project the result from the Ascendant.

If the lot is in an angle or a good place, the indications for having children are good. If it is in a sign of “few children, then it indicates a small number of children”. If ♁ is with the lot then the person “will be sterile or will have few children or will be grieved with an intense grief on account of [his] children.”

If the lot is in the 6th or 12th place, “then neither a male nor a female will be born to him, and he will suffer distress and grief from this; but if he should have children, they will not stay with him so that they will part from him in the cities.”

Planets square or opposed to the lot indicate “a multitude of children” but if no planets are square or opposed to the lot, “then these [natives] have a need for children.”

The number of signs between the lot and its domicile ruler indicate the number of children. If the signs hold a malefic, the children will die.

If the ☉ is square or opposed to the lot, it will increase the number of male children; the ☽ square or opposed increases the number of female children.

If there is no planet in or aspecting the lot the first child will miscarry or die horribly.

♄ and ♀ indicate children if they are in good places but deny them if they are in sterile signs (♈, ♎, ♏, ♐, the beginning of ♑, the middle of ♒, ♓ and ♈.) ♊ abounds in children, as does ♌, but it also indicates their death.

### 2.11 Lot of Transit with respect to Children

The birth of children is timed by the activation of a lot taken from ♄ to ♂ by day or from ♂ to ♄ by night and projected from the Ascendant.

A child will be born when ♄ or ♀ or ♃ transits the lot, its square or opposition.

Children may also be born when the year comes to the place (sign) containing ♄ or ♀.

### 2.12 Lots of Male and Female Children

The Lot of Male Children is counted from ♄ to the ☉ by day, from the ☉ to ♄ by night and projected from the Ascendant.

The Lot of Female Children is counted from the ☽ to ♀ by day or from ♀ to the ☽ by night and projected from the Ascendant.

The condition of each lots ruler is used to determine whether the person will have more male or female children.

The person will have few or no children as:

- ♃♂♂ indicates the death of children
- ♀♂♃ without the aspect of ♄ indicates few children, or, sterility if ♃ also aspects the ☽ while she is in a tropical (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋) sign with a malefic
- the ☽ square a malefic indicates there will be no children

The person will suffer grief and sorrow due to children if:

- a malefic squares the lots indicates the loss of children

- the lot in the 12th or 6th aspected by  $\hbar$ , which indicates the death of children
- $\blacklozenge$  square or opposed to a malefic or in the 7th or 4th with a malefic indicates the death of children, especially if  $\blacklozenge$  is “without light”<sup>1</sup>
- the  $\odot$  and  $\hbar$  in the same sign indicates grief related to having children
- $\hbar$  injuring  $\text{♀}$  without the aspect of  $\blacklozenge$  indicates grief over children or they will have children but not enjoy them especially if  $\hbar$  is also aspecting the  $\text{♄}$
- $\blacklozenge$  cadent indicates a child but they will lose their parents.

If  $\blacklozenge$  and  $\text{♀}$  are not injured there will be “an abundance of children”. If the two are USB or in their fall then there will be no children or if there are, they will die.

The planets aspecting the midheaven, its sign and aspects and the sign following the midheaven indicate male and female children.

The likelihood of children can be judged from the strength and condition of the 5th house and its lord. If the ruler is cadent and neither  $\blacklozenge$  nor  $\text{♀}$  aspect the 5th while malefics do, there will be few children and their lives may be brief. If at least one benefic aspects the 5th the person will have some children. If the lord of the 5th is in a good place, aspecting the midheaven, there will be an abundance of children and good because of them.

---

<sup>1</sup>Not in the same hemisphere above or below the horizon as the  $\odot$ .

### 2.13 Number of Male and Female Children

If a feminine sign is the fifth place<sup>1</sup> and its ruler is in a masculine sign, the person will have more male children than female. If the place is masculine and the ruler is in a feminine sign, then there will be more female children.

If the ♃ is angular in an equatorial sign (♊, ♋) it indicates sterility for both men and women.

When ♋ transits, squares, opposes, or trines radix ♂ the spouse is pregnant.

### 2.14 Planets in Trine

♏Δ♋ if ♋ is in a good place, the trine “indicates an abundance of property and land and trees and buildings and mosques; sometimes he will be lord of a group and will agree with his father, and sometimes he will direct the affairs of his city and of landed estates, and he will benefit because of strangers and will be lucky and will be honored in [all] ways”

♏Δ♋ & ☿ the person “will be secretive, learned in hidden [and] secret things, or he will direct the affairs of kings and of cities, or with this he will be pious and will raise a child other than his own, and he will not be benefited by his own children, because they will die or will be separated from him” and if ♂ also aspects then the “good will decrease and misery and evil reputation and misfortune will increase”

---

<sup>1</sup>Not sure of this, Dorotheus says “look at the place which I mentioned to you and its lord”, the fifth seems to be most logical choice.

- $\text{h}\Delta\sigma^7$  without an aspect from  $\text{L}$  and  $\text{X}$ , “then he will be rich, a ruler of reason, strong, well known in the metropolis—he will be put up in the manner of kings, but he will see the death of his older his older brothers”
- $\text{h}\Delta\odot$  in a diurnal chart, “then the matter of [his] livelihood will be good because he will be well known, a possessor of renown, praiseworthy—he will seek leadership and will be lucky for his father” and it will be better if both of them are in a masculine sign.  
 In a nocturnal chart, the person “will have a good livelihood, but there will be a decrease from his property and his father’s property”
- $\text{h}\Delta\text{D}$  “indicates respect and great benefit from kings or those like kings, and he will be praiseworthy, especially if the  $\text{D}$  is increasing; if the  $\text{D}$  is decreasing” there will be less of what was mentioned
- $\text{h}\Delta\wp$  “indicates a good livelihood in good repute [and] favor, except that calamity will come upon him on account of his inferiors and he will have no marriage”
- $\text{h}\Delta\text{X}$  “indicates that he will be calm, reasonable, not vacillating in [his] thought, firm in reflexion, learned in calculation and book[s], outstanding in his livelihood”
- 
- $\text{L}\Delta\sigma^7$  “he will be a leader, a ruler for action, learned in affairs—he will have benefit and honor from the chiefs”

- ♄Δ♀ “he will be handsome in his appearance and face and will have elevation because of women and love”
- ♄Δ☿ “he will be quick-witted, intelligent, perfect, and it indicates that he will be better than his relatives and his relatives will desire honor for him—praiseworthy he will not cease in the work of great cities and kings; some of these [natives] are learned in the stars of heaven”
- ♄Δ♌ “will increase the praise for the native and he will have rank and status. Look concerning what I told you at the time of the native’s fortune; one of these will sometimes be a leader, a chief for men, while another of them will be a leader in business, and another of them for commerce, and another of them in the leadership of armies, especially if the ♌ is increasing”
- ♄Δ☼ “indicates wealth and abundant good fortune and children and a wedding and life in a high rank”
- 
- ♂Δ☼ in a nocturnal chart with ♂ as the hour ruler of the birth<sup>1</sup> “then he will be elevated in the good because sometimes he will be a powerful king” and if ♄ is also trine or is angular “then he will be a leader mighty in nobility, but if with this the ♌ is good, then he will be valiant, governing life and death and assassination, and [it indicates] lodgings quick to change, and a suspicious

---

<sup>1</sup>Dorotheus says if “Mars is the lord of the hour”, I believe the birth hour is meant.



nature quick in distrust—he will [even] distrust himself, especially if it is in a masculine sign”

♂♂♀ “he will be wealthy, rich, abounding in steadfastness, good in horse-[riding], might in endeavour[s], except that he will love intercourse with women and riding forbidden [mounts]”

♂♂☿ “he will be a supervisor in work, learned in quarrels, power will be plentiful for him, [but] his situation will not increase because of quarrels and books”

♂♂♂ if the ♂ is decreasing or is the triplicity ruler in a nocturnal chart, “it indicates that he will be good in supervising work, quickly successful in what he seeks, but if ♀ aspects the two, he will be a governor possessing good fortune and leadership, one abounding in power. But in a diurnal nativity when the ♂ is increasing it indicates sickness in his body”

---

☉♂ “look at the power of the planets and their aspect[s], then judge according to that”

---

♀♂♂ “he will be handsome [and] happy, [but] he will have no constancy in marriage, and he will make his appearance in debaucheries”

---

☿♂ “will make him quick-witted [and] learned”

---

## 2.15 Planets in Square

♂☐♀ the parent’s property will be spoiled and overturned, in some cases they “will not obtain no-

bility,” the person’s property will be diminished, their “works interrupted,” there will be neither wealth nor poverty, and it will be worse if  $\mathfrak{h}$  overcomes  $\mathfrak{L}$ .

$\mathfrak{h}\square\sigma$  if  $\mathfrak{h}$  overcomes  $\sigma$ , the person “will have little medical treatment, he will be weak in his body, unceasing in diseases because of fevers, he will be shaking, and the properties of his parents will be destroyed, and he will see the death of his brothers” but if  $\sigma$  overcomes  $\mathfrak{h}$ , “then it will hasten [his] father to death before [his] mother, and they will not survive long, but they will spoil the properties of [their] parents and will envy [their] parents and will harm their food”

$\mathfrak{h}\square\odot$  if the  $\odot$  overcomes  $\mathfrak{h}$ , “then he will spoil his parents’ legacies, and he will be an enemy of his relatives, and the clearness of the open air will become cloudy with work, and diseases will rise up upon him, and he will worry about chains, and he will toil with respect to his livelihood, an unknown in his city,” but if  $\mathfrak{h}$  overcomes the  $\odot$ , “he will be confused or he will run away or he will hasten to death or his mother will beat him or there will be leprosy in him,...or his belly will cool until this harms him, and he will be cold in his body and his work”

$\mathfrak{h}\square\wp$  if  $\mathfrak{h}$  overcomes  $\wp$ , “it indicates his fall from women, [that he will be] rejected [and] devoid of good, and every evil will come to him” but if  $\wp$  overcomes  $\mathfrak{h}$  “then he will be weary [and] difficult, but he will be blessed with a good wife who will be better than he in lineage, one who is admirable in herself together with her agreeing with his parents”

𐍃𐍂𐍆 if 𐍃 overcomes 𐍆, “it will bring many misfortunes to these nativities and will make the native base, listless in work, a cheater—he will love the fault that is not his own<sup>1</sup> and with this he will be afflicted, a lisper or a mute or a deaf man” but if 𐍆 overcomes 𐍃, “then it will not be good, but the evil...will be less”

𐍃𐍂𐍇 “it will harm the owner of the nativity” and if 𐍃 overcomes the 𐍇, “a flaw in the manner of his walking and a chronic illness in his body will come upon him, and he will not be courageous for any of his work, and he will spoil his mothers’ properties, and there might be among them some who hate their fathers” but if the 𐍇 overcomes 𐍃, “the years will reach him immediately, and this native will be diseased [and] will have little property, and if it is in a feminine sign, there might be a judgment that he will be blessed with a wife who will be his enemy, and who will consider harming him—he will not be about to enjoy his children”

---

𐍇𐍂𐍆 if 𐍇 overcomes 𐍆, “he will be noble, steadfast, compassionate, and some of them will be honored for aid in the houses of kings [and will be] well known in the house[s] of the kingdom, and some of them will control the work of the king, and their status will increase high up, but they will spoil their fathers’ property and be worried by the matter of children, that they will have few children” but if 𐍆 overcomes 𐍇, “then it will make them quick in seeking their livelihoods, and he will be in this feeble-minded, tiresome, fa-

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes says “this does not really make sense,...Rather, the native will remain in other people’s service, and will be resentful of them” with a reference *Mathesis* VI.9.

tigued, and slander and quarrel[s] with men will reach him because of [his] work for the government”

☯☐☉ if ☯ overcomes the ☉, the person “will be noble and his father [will have] great good and connections with kings and many benefits together with honor, and he will lord it over many men” but if the ☉ overcomes ☯, “it indicates that his father will be noble but his property will diminish, and he will rise up from his homeland, and the people of his city will elevate him, and some of the more powerful of his enemies will be furious with him”

☯☐♀ if ☯ overcomes ♀, the person “will be loving to people and he will profit because of women, [will be] good at calculating for [his] livelihood, approaching near to God..., forceful in [his] oaths” but if ♀ overcomes ☯, *<quoting Dykes<sup>1</sup>: “then evil will be spoken of him in his happiness, and a blemish will afflict him from his eagerness for women, loving praise, and pleasure, and cleanliness will accompany him; but he will be afflicted in what he tries to do (of work), and through his own actions he will be seen as [committing] offense, and he will rejoice in whatever good comes to him due to evil, except that he will do evil”>*

☯☐☿ if ☯ overcomes ☿, the person “will be a scribe, a learned man, a calculator, [and] he will live on a side different from his relatives in a good condition” but if ☿ overcomes ☯, the person “will not be rich, but he will be great in generosity, but if in some of the houses in which he stays good reaches him, he will not be charitable in his work and will not be thankful to people”

---

<sup>1</sup>The Pingree text does not include anything on ♀ overcoming ☯.

♄♃ in day or night charts, if ♄ overcomes the ♃, the person “and [his] mother will be good in [their] livelihood, superior in [their] nobility and [their] retinue, loving among their kinsfolk, [and] the native will have fame [and be] well known among the mighty of the people, a rich man, and they will praise him, and better than praise” but if the ♃ overcomes ♄, the person “will be good in great matters, praiseworthy, generous to the chiefs, but there will be a clear fate in him, a diminishment and an idleness from work”

---

♂☐☉ if ♂ overcomes the ☉, the person “will relax at the beginning of his life, but disease will increase at the end of his life, and ruin will descend upon him, and calamity will be continuous” but if the ☉ overcomes ♂, “then it will be harmful in the matter of his father and of himself, [he will] abound in calamity, misfortune in his property will reach him until everything that he possesses disappears, and he will be frightened, perplexed, obsessed with delusions, and his vision will grow dark and his sight will be in error; in a diurnal nativity the misfortune will be worse except that sometimes he will die from this and perish”

♂☐♀ if ♂ overcomes ♀, “then it is bad in nativities because it produces misfortune and disaster and diseases because of women; and if it is thus and the sign is tropical (♎,♏,♐,♑), then he will be effeminate [and] he will perform this vicious act, and if marriage is judged for him, then he will marry slave girls and disgraced women or he will be debauched by whores, and if the nativity if of females then she will be a whore, one of the women who have intercourse with men wickedly” but if ♀ overcomes ♂, “then those things reach

him which we mentioned before, but the will keep this quiet for shame and will repent in the end”

♂◻♀ if ♂ overcomes ♀, the person “will do things shocking among people, and it will imbue the native with reasons for misery from every place and it will harm him in quarrels and work and everything that he concerns himself with, and slander will come to him from his relatives and the place of his secret; the misfortune is worse than this at a diurnal nativity” and less in a nocturnal one, but if ♀ overcomes ♂, the person “will be inferior, feeble, illegally seizing the properties of the people—he will not have power over any of their goods without taking it and he will think of a thought because they will argue with him lest he be malicious—and he will be exasperated with his relatives, [and] his own eagerness is for the future, or he will be spiteful, greedy for properties, and most of his effort will be in the pursuit of wealth”

♂◻♂ if ♂ overcomes the ♂, the person’s “mother will be a widow, and he will decrease in his livelihood and his property, and his mother will perish or one of his brothers will die horribly, and [his] grief [will be] great, and some of them will be afflicted with madness, and they will flee to a house of worship, or it will afflict him with the destruction of [his] vision and [with] dismay, especially if ♂ is in a term of ♀ or the ♂ in a term of ♀ or a term of ♂ as sometimes the power of the terms changes nativities” but if the ♂ overcomes ♂, “it indicates the small standing of his mother and scarcity in her livelihood, and for the native a spoiling of [his] property and misfortune”

---

☉□☽ if the ☉ is square ☽ or if they are in angles while the benefics aspect both “it indicates for the native an abundance of properties and nobility and happiness, but if the malefics aspect they will be in alarm about their livelihood[s] and their live[s]” and if at the same time the ☽ is applying to ♄ while ♄ aspects her, the person “will be noble, but will arrive at trouble, and some for whom he intends evil will envy him;” but if ♄ is not in aspect and a malefic is, “the danger will be more suitable that misfortune and misery will reach him”

---

☿□♀ regardless of who overcomes whom, the person “will be learned in a marvellous [and] beautiful craft, [and] he will be known among people because of taking pains at this, and their sayings about him will abound, and the mother of women will regret [his existence]”

---

☽□♀ if the ☽ overcomes ♀, it indicates the person “will be wealthy, and it indicates in the nativities of men [that there will be] censure on account of women” but if ♀ overcomes the ☽, “then it will increase his good, and he will be good in [his] condition and livelihood and complexion, he will be handsome [and] clean, and he will be charming in [his] speech, but he will have no constancy in [his] union with women; and it indicates that his mother will be clean [and] well supplied and his wife beautiful, but she will not be virtuous [and] will not love her husband”

---

☿□☽ if ☿ overcomes the ☽, the person “will be insignificant, cold, [and] shameless, without having any satisfaction in anything or any trust in [his] heart or [his] speech” but if the ☽ overcomes the ☿, the

person “will be good in [his] opinion, good in [his] words, a reasonable man, but he will worry about the affairs of his city; if the malefics overpower ☿ in its quartile of it [the ♃], then he will be caught in a contract and a book, and will be thrown in prison and chains”

## 2.16 Planets in Opposition

♄♃ “there will be no good in his condition or his work, and he will grieve for his children. If ♄ is in the ascendent and ♃ in the West, then in the beginning of his years he will be miserable but in their end happy”

♄♂ the person will have “misery and misfortune in [his] livelihood and grief and disease and harm and a decrease in his life and a paucity of children and an abundance of enemies and distress and a struggle concerning what is between him and his relatives and a quick death for his father and misery on top of misery.

If these two planets are in a wet place, then this native will be miserable in streams and the sea or near this, and diseases from dampness will reach him so that he will be harmed in his body.

If it is in a quadruped sign, then injury and biting will reach him from lions or he will be poisoned at the end of his life. If these two are in quartile (☐), it indicates approximately this or whatever of falling may come to the native until he sees that he is dying, and it is worse for him if the two malefics are injured by the ♃ without the aspect of ♄.

If they are both, together with this, in cardines, then this is an indication of death in separation



from his relatives and his country, and some of them will tumble from the good or fall into the hands of the people. But if they are both in what follows the cardines, one of them in opposition to the other, it indicates the end of hope and destruction, especially if it is in a feminine sign.

If both are in cadents, then there will be less for the evil of these two, but according to this the native will fall and [this] will sadden him, but if the ☉ aspects it dissipates this injury”

☿☉ without an aspect from ♄, “it indicates trouble for his father in [his] livelihood and chronic illness, and the spoiling of his father’s property—if his father dies he will quickly spoil his property—and his death will be a bad death, and the native will fall upon evil, especially if it is in a feminine sign”

☿♀ “he will be excessive in fornication, a disgraced man, and he will not marry; if he does marry, he will marry a disgraced songstress or a stranger or one in whom there is a chronic illness or a servant or one in whom there is sickness, and joy will not reach [him] in the acts of ♀”

☿☿ “it indicates a stammer of the tongue and few words, or he will be a lisper, especially if ☿ is in a sign which has no voice (♄, ♀, ♄) and is under the ☉’s rays and with this aspects the ☽. If ♂ aspects it, it diminishes from these evils but increases [his] trouble; but he will be perfect in intellect [and] sedate, but no gain will reach him from his intellect and his reason except that he will be learned, stuffed with intelligence, and because of this he will be good in rank because, even if he is younger than they, his older [broth-

ers] will die and he will be their leader, and his father will die before his mother”

☿☽ “it indicates the spoiling of his mother’s property and pain and hidden illness and grief and irritation. If a benefic does not aspect it, it indicates a blemish in his mother’s body and badness of condition in the matter of livelihood.

If it is in a quadruped sign, it indicates injury from lions. If it is in one of the signs which resembles a human, this evil will reach him.

If the sign is wet, then [the injury] is from water and streams and diseases.

If the benefics do not make it ineffectual, it indicates chronic illness in his body and darkness in [his] two eyes, and some of them will live exiled from their city”

---

The text for ☿☿♂, ☼, ♀, and ♃, is missing. What is shown below for these configurations is taken from Dykes *Dorotheus: Carmen Astrologicum* footnotes, p153 that are based on Firmicus’s *Mathesis*.

☿☿♂ “there will be unevenness in life and a loss of wealth, as well as hostility from friends, and dangers from rash actions”

☿☼ “there will be a loss of the father’s assets, and he will fall from a previous honor, with lesser people being preferred to him, and it is worse in a nocturnal nativity”

☿♀ “it indicates promotion, advancement, good fortune, and wealth; but also unfaithfulness and dis-

*agreements from friends, and their friends are ungrateful*

♄♂☿ “*the native will be trained in speech, but it also indicates insurrection and strife from the people, that envy from others will harm their reputation among kings, and also the death of siblings or conflict between them*”

♄♂☾ if the ☾ is waxing and west of the ☉ in the evening the person “will be celebrated with respect to [his] livelihood, a famous man, and he will be one of those who relies on himself and will not obey another, especially if the ☾ is less in degrees than ♄.

If the ☾ is greater in degrees, then it is harmful because [there will be] a decrease in [his] livelihood [and] afflictions and agony will come to him”

---

♂♂☉ “in a diurnal nativity, it indicates a horrible death for the native’s father or a decrease in his sight, and the native will fall from a lofty place and afflictions will come to him; in a nocturnal nativity his work will be slight and his property will be dissipated”

♂♂♀ the person “will be one of those in whom there is no constancy with respect to [his] thinking, and it will harm his father and his marriage. If it is in a tropical sign (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋), it indicates quarreling and misfortune because of women”

♂♂♂ the person “will have little shame [but will be] a master of lies and books or bewitchment and injury, and his livelihood will be from this, and he will have little property, but his wife will be

good, and he will not cease being surety and giving guarantees for it, but he will run away from the discharge of [his] trust, and he will submit it to the judges and to argument, and fear will come to him and dread of [his] superiors, and he will depart for places in a land other than his own, especially if ☿ is in ♁'s term or in its own term or house"

♂♂ the person's "life will be short, and as long as he stays alive [it will be] in misery and calamity, and some of them will die before they marry and some of them will die a terrible death, and he will be discontent and his limbs will be cut off or tied up"

---

The ☿♂ is missing, Dykes includes the following from Firmicus' *Mathesis* in a footnote:

☿♂ *"it alters the life, status, and wealth of the native, alternating between wealth and poverty; it also adds blemishes to the face, and bodily weakness"*

---

♀♂ "there will be no good in [his] marriage and no children (even if there were, they would die), and he will be disgraced and beaten because of women"

---

☿♂ "indicates quarrels and affliction from groups of people and great slander, and he will be a coward in speaking"

## 2.17 Planets in Sextile

"The aspect of sextile: judge it in this about as the aspect of trine except that it is weaker."

## 2.18 Saturn in a sign with another planet

♄,♄ the person “will abound in landed estates [and will be] the steward for kings and nobles, entrusted with properties of other than his own, and...will be noble if ♄ does not aspect”

♄,♄ “indicates good in [his] character, but there will be no good in regard to his property, and reason will keep him waiting, and he will marry, and his body will be weakened, and [his] bile and black bile will be aroused against him, and his father will die before mother, and he will spoil his father’s property, and he will turn to his brothers who were born before him because they will die or their disease[s] will be severe, and grief will come [upon him] and dependence, misery and blemish. And if ♄ aspects, it will make easy and dissipate this misery [and he will] bear it”

♄,☉ “he will spoil his father’s property and his end will come to misery, and worse than this in a nocturnal nativity, [if ♄] is eastern or western, with regard to his father and his brothers and his own peculiarity<sup>1</sup>.

If the ☉ is in less degrees, then it is more terrible and worse because a horrible death will come to his father and like this, as I told you, of what the native will suffer, and he will fall from his good fortune, and disease from dampness and weakness will befall him, and he will love building[s] and sometimes will acquire wealth from them so that his living is from them, but still he will be miserable.

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes has “and especially to himself.”

If it is in the house of the ☉ or in the house of ♄, it indicates that his father will be noble and will not be discomforted, but the native will be hostile to his father, and what is like this as I mentioned”

♄,♀ “he will marry a blemished woman for whom he will not be suitable, or he will have intercourse with a barren woman or one whom there is a chronic illness, and he will be blemished and will be despised because of this, and he will have few children, and the one for whom children are judged will have few male [children]; he will have no constancy toward women [and] will have no comfort, but it will chill him; and according to that practice predict in the nativities of women”

♄,♂ “he will be a lisper, cumbersome with [his] tongue, slight in [his] work, but a calm man, a smart fellow [and] profound”

♄,♂ “will spoil the good of his mother and her work, and she will be emaciated, [but it will be] strong in decrease for his mother’s property, weak in [his] body and in his mother’s similarly.

If the ♄ is increasing and the nativity diurnal while the benefics aspect, then it will remove the evils.

If the nativity is nocturnal and the ♄ is increasing or decreasing in the aspect of ♄ and ♀, then it indicates an increase in everything”

## 2.19 Planets in the same sign

♄,♂ “indicates leadership and property and honor in metropolises and cities, and he will be one of the judges for communities, abounding in work.

If they are both in the house of one of them, then he will be powerful, steadfast, celebrated in arms, and the like”

♄,☉ if ♄ is USB “it indicates decrease of everything. If it [♄] is eastern<sup>1</sup>, it indicates good fortune and property and gain and luck to his parents and joy in [his] children”

♄,♀ “he will be one of those who will be brought up in honor and wealth, he will love the generality of people, [he will be] merciful, good in [his] intention, good in [his] appearance, pleasant in the eyes of chiefs and nobles, desirous of good and of fame; property and leadership will come to him because of women and houses of worship, and [he will be] good in [his] marriage and children.

If a malefic is [not]<sup>2</sup> between these two, then he will be beloved and received wherever he may be; thus [also] in the nativities of women.

If ♄ is with ♀ in a strong place and the ☽ and ♂ aspect these two, then a disgusting and shameful affair involving one of his relatives will be added.”

♄,☿ “he will be an expert in law, victorious in words, and perfect in reasoning and intellect, learned, the raiser up for the great among the people, and some of them will be secretaries for the more powerful grandees or kings”

♄,☽ “indicates an increase in property, dignity, and good fortune. If ♄ is powerful [and] eastern,

---

<sup>1</sup>“Eastern” here probably means that ♄ is at least 15° degrees from the ☉, and rises ahead of it.

<sup>2</sup>There is no ‘not’ in the text but the statement doesn’t make much sense if it is excluded; malefics between the two would be more apt to cause conflict or separation than love and a warm welcome.

there will be good for the native from his fathers. If the **Д** is less in degrees and **Л** is not bright, then this will decrease the good fortune of the native”

---

**♂, ☉** “indicates the swiftness of his father’s death. It is worse and more terrible if it is in a cardine or what follows a cardine—it indicates pain for the native an aches, and he will be envious, squandering his father’s property, and iron or fire will fall on him; and he will be mixed up in his opinion[s and] will have no constancy in them”

**♂, ♀** “indicates quarreling and disaster and injury because of women. If the sign is tropical (**Υ, ☿, ♋, ♎**), then he will have intercourse with a bad woman, and however it may be quarreling will come to him because of women, and he will be excessive in sexual intercourse; predict similarly in the nativities of women that they will be disgraced in sexual intercourse”

**♂, ☿** “he will be a liar except that he will be reasonable, intelligent, learned, desirous of culture, [and] he will love arguments.

If **Л** aspects it, [he will have] praise for that.

If it is **♀**, then [it will be] like this and he will be strong in love for his children.

If **♄** aspects, then there is no good in it because he comes to hatred and defects; and it will punish this native

If **☿** and **♂** are thus USB in a cardine and they aspect **♀**, then he will be misleading in his intention and thought, [and] the leaders of thieves will be opposed to him, [and] he will act perfidiously in pleasure.



If 𐌲 aspects, the evil will desist from him.

♂, 𐌲 “indicates the shortness of his survival and a terrible death and a chronic illness, and some of his flesh will be cut with iron, and it indicates misery for his mother. If they are both in a cardine, then he will be relaxed in his work [and] refractory, and in addition to this it indicates injury

---

☉, ♀ If “western in nocturnal nativities and eastern<sup>1</sup> in diurnal nativities, then he will be praiseworthy [and] welcome”

☉, ☿ whether ☿ is east or west of the ☉, the person “will be gentle, a scribe, [and] he will have status for his culture and reasoning, and he will be a chief and will benefit others”

---

♀, ☿ “he will be lazy in [his] jobs, desirous of joy and pleasure, abounding in women, adorned with culture and words, loquacious in poetry because he will compose pleasing [and] beautiful words, but he will be disconcerted because of intercourse with women so that his pleasure and his desire will be in slave girls.

If both are in the ascendent, then it is better and more secure for their strength, or profit and nobility will come to him from women if 𐌲 aspects it”

♀, 𐌲 “he will be great in [his] appearance, good in [his] children, joyful, fortunate, but he will have no constancy in [his] marriage [and will be] desirous with respect to women other than his won, and the wives of some of them will do similarly in having intercourse with other than them”

---

<sup>1</sup>“Western” most likely means “setting after the ☉,” “Eastern”, rising before the ☉.

☿,♃ “he will be praiseworthy in [his] reason and understanding, perfect except that he will be a liar [and] will not be constant with respect to an affair.

If a benefic aspects these two, this evil will diminish and it indicates for his mother good except that she will be disgraced by men.

If the ♃ is greater in degrees than ☿, then it will be good because, if the ♃’s degrees abound, it accomplishes the strength of the planets which it is leaving because the ♃ is nearer the earth than the planets [are]”

## 2.20 The Places of the Planets

“Look with this at the places of the planets and their portions<sup>1</sup>, and know this as says the honored [and] praiseworthy by three natures, Hermes, the King of Egypt.”

## 2.21 Moon in the Places

ASC OR MC:

If the ♃ is in the hemisphere opposite the ☉ and aspected by benefics the person’s good is increased, if by malefics, the person’s good is decreased.

ANGULAR OR SUCCEDENT:

In her house (☽) or exaltation (♊) or term<sup>2</sup> the person “will be well-known, abounding in friends and acquaintances, [and] staying a long time, he with his mother.

---

<sup>1</sup>This probably refers to the planet’s bounds (terms) as the Greeks used the word *portions* for *degrees*.

<sup>2</sup>The ♃ has no terms under the Egyptian Term system most commonly used; its possible *triplicity* is meant: ♀, ♁, ♃, ☿.

If a malefic is with it or aspects it, it will cut off [his] hope, and if he is master of something he will not take pleasure in it.

If a benefic aspects it without a malefic, then he will be a powerful chief [and] a commander.

If a malefic and a benefic aspect it, the he will be miserable [but] will attain some nobility and status, or his brothers will die a terrible death.”

7TH:

In the 7th the ☿ “indicates sudden death for the mother, and for the native a decline in his livelihood and character from his position and grief for his children and his women.”

4TH:

If malefics aspect, it “indicates an intense disease in a hidden place, and argument[s] and grief for [his] children, and women will be roused up against him.

If a benefic aspects it, it indicates that he will benefit from an evil job.”

## 2.22 The Sun in the Places

ASC OR MC:

If the ☉ is “in its own house or a male sign, then it will be good.

If the benefics aspect it from the tenth place, he will be praiseworthy, a leader over groups in nobility; and it indicates similarly if it is in the midheaven except that he will have few brothers.”

7th:

“[I]ndicates hidden misery for his parents and his brothers.

If ☿ is with it, then he will abound in property, especially if ☿ is western<sup>1</sup>.”

If the ☉ is not in its own places and is aspected by malefics, especially in the opposition or square of ♂, it “indicates terror because of fire or a terrible death or evil rising up in him or a [bad] name or yelling or murder arises, and some of them will be food for lions; if the ♃ is injured, then it will be worse, but if the benefics aspect they will diminish the misery.”

4th:

A fall is indicated or “a decrease in the property of his fathers, but if the lord of its house or its exaltation overpower it, it will ameliorate this evil<sup>2</sup>.”

## 2.23 Saturn in the Places

### ASCENDANT

In its own places in a diurnal chart “♄ will have no harm because he will be a lord of landed estates and buildings” according to the level of rank or status as indicated by the chart; however, “he will be weak in body, conspicuous in diseases, [and] he will not attain complete nobility, but he will be mediocre, he will not profit in the matter of marriage, and he will leave his parents.”

---

<sup>1</sup>As they are already in the west, in the 7th, this most likely means ☿ is western of the ☉, setting after it sets.

<sup>2</sup>Here he seems to be saying that if the domicile or exaltation ruler of the ☉ is square from the 1st (the 10th from the 4th) it lessens the harm. A trine “from the right” or 9th place of a sign can also be said to “overcome” or “overpower” the aspected planet so in this case, a trine from the domicile or exaltation ruler from the 12th (9th from the 4th) may also lessen the evil, possibly by harming others (12th is a cadent house) rather than the native himself. Angular houses usually effect the person, succedent houses, the person and others, cadent houses, effect the person indirectly via other people, especially if an exalted planet is involved, they tend to deflect the harm onto others.

If ♄ is the places of his enemies<sup>1</sup> “it will be more injurious because his reputation will become bad and his children will be few; in a nocturnal nativity it will be worse because he will have difficulty in affairs, [will be] tormented by diseases, ugly in [actual] appearance and [in] rumor, secretive, injurious in nature and [to] most of the things which are near [him, and children] will not be born to them nor will they love their relatives.”

Other planets in the 7th while ♄ is in the 1st indicate:

♄ his older brothers will die before him and “he will fall into the hand[s] of his enemies.”

♂ “abundant evil and a bad death for the native and [his] parents.”

♀ the death of the person’s wife.

♂ his parents may die suddenly

#### MIDHEAVEN

♄ here mars the person’s livelihood and good fortune for thirty years, especially in a nocturnal nativity, in a fixed sign. In a mutable sign, the person will do better but his good fortune will be slight.

If ♄ is in the 10th with ♂ the person will come to a bad end unless a benefic is in the 7th.

#### IC

“Indicates the death of [his] children and brothers or their paucity, and he will be heavy in [his] body, diseased, and injury will come to him from the sea or [from] water or from the coldness of his limbs, and his death will be a terrible death, but also he will see what he loves in his enemies.”

---

<sup>1</sup>In his detriment (♄, ♀) or detriment (♄), or possibly in ♄, or peregrine.

“If ☿ is with ♄, then it will be worse in the matter of his children and his slaves and his servants, and his good fortune and his property will be spoiled.”

## 2.24 Jupiter in the Places

### ASCENDENT

The person “will possess a good marriage and children and brothers and reputation, especially in a diurnal nativity,” less so in a nocturnal nativity.

The father is better than the mother if ♄ is in a masculine sign and the reverse if ♄ is in a feminine sign and, if it is in a mutable, sign the person “will raise up his parents<sup>1</sup>”

If, at the same time, ♄ is in the 7th, his father will be harmed and his holder siblings will be destroyed and “he will see what he loves in his enemies together with praise and condmenation, and he will be in the houses of worship and the houses of kings entrusted with a throng of people.” ♂ in the 10th or 11th “will diminish this or spoil it in the end.”

If ♂, rather than ♄, is in the 7th the person will be superior to his enemies and his superiority will be even better if ♀ witnesses ♄ and more so again if the ☽ is also involved with them.

### MIDHEAVEN

The person “will be far out in his fame, noble, having good fortune and children, especially in a diurnal nativity.” And if ♂ is in a good place and “in his own portion<sup>2</sup>,

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes sames he will be “named” for his parents; he believes Pingree’s reading, which implies the person will raise their parent’s status, is a misreading (CAD p.163 fn1).

<sup>2</sup>Dykes has “in his own share” meaning “in his own sect” p.164 fn2. Although “portion” could possibly mean “term” or “bound” as the Greeks used “portion” for “degree.”

then he will be one of the chiefs and lords of armies, well known [and] praiseworthy.”

“If ♀ aspects, it will increase his good fortune because of women, and he will be praiseworthy [and] famous.

If ☿ aspects from a good place, it will increase [his] learning and reason and intelligence.”

#### DESCENDENT

The person’s condition and status will be better when he is older, “and his end will be good, but it is better if ♄ is in his own house or exaltation, but he will be troubled and miserable in his youth and he will see the death of his women and his brothers, especially if a malefic aspects it or is with it, but he will have work and medical treatment in the houses of kings and of chiefs, and he will be a lord of property and goods from what he attains of power, and his reputation will grow, and, if he dies, he will leave behind a good name and a pleasing reputation.”

“If the West [7th] is a tropical sign (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋), then he will rise up and escape from his neighborhood and rob kings and spoil the property of his fathers, especially if a malefic aspects it (we have seen [people] like this who were lords and leaders, [but] then were expelled from their properties [and were] empty), and one of them will be consoled with a woman servant or a foreign woman or one who is worse in [her] lineage than is he.

If ♄ aspects ♀ and ☿ and ♂ while the ☽ is with it, it indicates debauchery and misfortune and misery.

If ♀ aspects ♄ “while both of them aspect the ☽, then he will be learned, a fortune-teller, [and] will predict things before they happen.”

#### IC

The person will have success from “an act of secrecy, and the native will rise, and his control over his property

and his good will improve, and the condition of his parents will be better, but [there will be] no good in his marriage, or he will marry at the end of his life and [children] will be born to him at the end of his years or their middle, and he will fall in the middle of his years from his good fortune, [but] then he will get up and his affairs will prosper.”

## 2.25 Mars in the Places

### ASCENDENT

If the chart is diurnal “it indicates misery and pain in his good, and he will be malicious in character, have few children, be filled up forcibly<sup>1</sup>, [and] he will love debauchery and do this in other than charity and the like; it indicates similarly in the nativities of women, and it is worse than this if ♁ aspects, but better than it if ♃ aspects because it strengthens him [the native] and he will be welcome.

But if ♂ is in the ascendent while [one] luminary is in the West [7th] and the other in the cardine under the earth [4th], and ♃ is cadent, then his parents will die suddenly a terrible death, and the native will be taken, but will not remain long in prison, and chronic illness will be in him, and this will be as if he had no upbringing and good.

If in nocturnal nativities ♂ is in the ascendent in a feminine sign while ♃ aspects, then it indicates intelligence and prosperity in [his] work and courage and daring, and besides this he will not escape from any of the misery.”

### 2ND PLACE (PROPERTY, ASSETS)

“If ♂ is in the house of property, it indicates the ruination of his property, but if a benefic aspects, then it will spoil some and leave some behind.”

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes says the person will be “full of anger” p.165



## MIDHEAVEN OR 11TH PLACE

“If ♂ is in the midheaven in diurnal nativities or in what follows the midheaven, then it indicates a fall and a terrible flight from his land.

If this sign is tropical(♏,♐,♑,♒) or possesses two bodies [*mutable*: ♀, ♁, ♃, ♄], then he will return to his city, especially if a benefic aspects it, but if a malefic aspects, he will spoil his father’s property, especially if the ☉ aspects. The calamity is less in nocturnal births, especially if ♄ aspects because ♄ diminishes the indolence and evil and increases the reason [and] intelligence.”

## MIDHEAVEN OR 4TH PLACE

“If ♂ is with the ♄ in the midheaven or under the earth, he will destroy property and goods, but if a malefic aspects, the native will repair what he had destroyed.”

## DESCENDENT

“If ♂ is in opposition to the ascendent, then it is bad because he [the native] will die or run away from his city or fall in misery, and it is worse than this if it is in other than its portion<sup>1</sup> and not in its place as misfortune and fire and disobedience will come to him from an evil act. Know which this is of the kinds of signs in which ♂ is. If ♄ aspects, it will make it easy for him, and misfortune will come to some of them until they look at death, [but] then they will escape. Know which this is of the kinds of signs in which ♂ is.

If ♄ aspects, it will make it easy for him, and misfortune will come to some of them until they look at death, [but] then they will escape.”

If ♂ “aspects the ☉ or ♄, it indicates his separation from his parents and his deflection from a livelihood.” If

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes reads this a being in its own “sect”, although the Greeks used “portion” to mean “degree” so it may refer to being in its own bounds or terms.

the ♄ is waxing and aspecting ♂ “then it will be bad because sometimes death and a terrible harm will come to him, and this will come to some of them in individuals or things, and with this misery he will be taken in blood.

If ♄ does not present itself, it will increase that which I mentioned very much, but in nocturnal nativities less.”

## 2.26 Venus in the Places

### ASCENDENT AND 2ND PLACE

If ♀ is rising before the ☉ and “rejoicing in its light<sup>1</sup>, he will be praiseworthy, handsome, a master of women, well known among kings and lords of men, well known in metropolises and cities, and some of them will have intercourse with the women of the rich, but they will not profit or excel by means of this, and some of them will occupy houses of worship [and will be] pure (we have seen something like this), great, one whom praise will lift up and his head will be crowned and he will be good in [his] character [and] will love wealth, especially if the ♄ aspects.

If with this ♂ and ♀ aspect, he will be delighted with joy, openly rich in this.

If with this, ♄ aspects, he will have intercourse with a mature woman who is not praiseworthy and its not famous for goodness. Predict like this in the nativities of women.”

### ASCENDENT

In the ascendent in a double-bodied sign (♊, ♋, ♎, ♏) “the native will be named with [the names of] two fathers or two mothers or with two names.”

---

<sup>1</sup>Visible and in sect.

♀ and ☿ in the ascendent and ♂ in the 7th “indicates ruination of his father’s property and the expenditure of what was acquired because of nobles and the quest for knowledge and approaching houses of worship because he will seek glory and high rank, but will fall in quarrel[s] because of an evil affair or on account of a woman, and he will be seized because of blood or poison, a shameless fellow, and emptiness and fear will reach him from this, but this evil will fade away by his donating property—afterwards he will be in charge of death. If ♄ aspects, it will diminish the evil, but if ♄ does not aspect, misery will reach him and flight and a fall from his property; in the nativities of women they will have intercourse with the nobles and some of them will get remuneration and profit.”

If ♀ is in the ascendent and ♄ is in the 7th, “it indicates his wife will give him poison to drink so that he will die by means of it.”

If ♀ is in the ascendant and ♄ is in the 10th, “he will be satisfied, wealthy, he will believe in God and will be a mightier noble than his fathers were, and he will travel to many cities and countries, but he will return to his city and will fall into contracts because of women, and children will be born to him unless a malefic aspects...predict similarly in the nativities of women.”

If ♀ is in a feminine sign, “it indicates that his mother is of nobler lineage than his father and she will live long.”

ASCENDENT, 10TH OR 4TH

If ♀ and ☿ are in the ascendent, MC or IC while being east of the ☉, “it indicates nobility and honor and praise in groups of people, and this will be because of insight and knowledge” and it is better if they are in a feminine or tropical sign (♊, ♋, ♌, ♍).

If ♀ is in the ascendent or 10th and aspects the ♃, “it

indicates marriage to one of his relatives.”

#### MIDHEAVEN, IC OR 5TH

The person will be “praiseworthy [and] welcome, but if a malefic aspects” ♀, it diminishes her power.

In a woman’s chart, ♀ in the 10th in a masculine sign indicates the woman will be a harlot and if ♂ or ♀ aspects ♀, the woman will be a lesbian, especially if the ☿ also aspects from a masculine sign.

In a man’s chart, if ♀ is in a feminine sign, “he will not be satisfied and the character of a woman will be in him, [he will be] weak; if ♀ aspects, it will enfeeble him and make it difficult for him in the acts of ♀.

#### DESCENDENT

♀ in the 7th “indicates that he will have a good end except that he will have no good in marriage, especially if there is none between these two [?]”<sup>1</sup> without the aspect of ♄. But if ♀ is in this place in nativities of women, then [it indicates] what is better than this because she will be one of those who do not perform the act of ♀ in an unnatural way. But if the ☿ is with it [♀] in the West in the nativities of men, then he will be effeminate and will marry a whore whom many men have had intercourse with.”

#### IC

If ♀ is in a masculine sign in a day chart, “it indicates disgrace because of women, and if ♀ or ♂ aspects he will see the death of his women; if the sign is tropical (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋), then it will not happen once but many times.”

---

<sup>1</sup>Could possibly mean if there is no friendship between the two places.

## 2.27 Mercury in the Places

### ASCENDENT

The person “will be bent over in everything and for everyone, and he will have many children, be reasonable, well known to everyone, desirous of instruction and words.

### MIDHEAVEN OR 11TH OR 2ND

And if ☿ is in a tropical sign (♈, ♎, ♊, ♋), the person “will be well known, praiseworthy among tribes and praiseworthy people.

If the sign possesses two bodies [♄, ♀, ♁, ♃], then he will be a trainer, a teacher or the leader of other’s children.

If it (☿) is in a feminine sign, he will attain nobility because of women.”

### ASCENDENT OR MIDHEAVEN

The person “will be wealthy or a scribe or possess [his] livelihood from calculation.

If ♀ is with it [☿], then he will be intuitive or an artisan for words, and he will be praised among most men.

### MIDHEAVEN

If ☿ is in the midheaven with ♄ the person “will speak in revelation and be mighty and overpower many men and be a chief in the houses of worship or the houses of kings or in metropolises or in cities, especially if it is in a tropical sign (♈, ♎, ♊, ♋). But if it is beneath the ☉’s rays, he will be silent for secrets, will not be about to reveal anything of what is tricky within himself.”

### DESCENDENT

“There will be no good in his brothers or his children, and quarrels and slander will be stirred up against him, especially if it is a sign possessing two bodies (♄, ♀, ♁, ♃) or tropical (♈, ♎, ♊, ♋) or ♂ aspects it; it indicates similarly also if it is under the earth.”

4TH

If ☿ is rejoicing in its light [*in sect*], with the benefics or the malefics, he will be good in [his] intentions, intelligent, a disclaimer and a secretive [fellow], but if the malefics aspect, with this he will be a magician or a thief, vicious, filled with falsehoods.”

Parts of Chapter 2.33, which covers the lights and planets in the house of the ☿ (☿) or ☾ (☾) has been blended into the following chapters 2.28 to 2.32.

## 2.28 Saturn in Another Planet’s House

If ♄ is in a house or terms of:

- ♄ “it indicates a good condition and honor, and he will raise the children of others, and he will be a steward, and he will love his wife and will be one of those who love nobles together with a goodness of livelihood; it indicates similarly in ♄’s term”
- ♂ “he will be difficult in his own and in other’s work”
- ♀ “there is no good in the matter of marriage because he will marry a young girl or an old woman or a whore, or grief and misery will come to him because of women, and some of them will come to fornication in order to acquire its fee”
- ☿ “he will be secretive, and will love silence except that he will be reasonable, learned in the secret of books, and injury will come to him for this reason, and his tongue will not be distinct or clear”
- ☾ “he will destroy his mother’s property and robe it in her lifetime, and his mother will be sick, and her limbs will complain of the cold and the black bile and the harsh pain until she shall make a vow for herself to a house of worship”

- ☉ “his father will be praiseworthy [and] will increase in his livelihood, but besides this his father will complain of dampness or will die a terrible death”

## 2.29 Jupiter in Another Planet’s House

If ♃ is in a house or terms of:

- ♄ the person “will be wealthy and for this no praise or honor for him will be known, and his secret affair[s] will not be looked into, but he will live in easy circumstances [and] will not be according to the extent of his condition [*but above them?*], and with this he will be charming in forgiveness and will not stretch out his neck to power and praise, and will not consider it, but tribulations will come to him in time.”
- ♂ “he will be one of the chiefs, a leader or a calculator for the stars, but if it is in a cardine aspecting the ♃ and the ☉], while these two are in cardines, then he will attain praise, but if both the luminaries are in a masculine sign, the he will be a chief of he armies on land and the seas, put in charge of death and life.”
- ♀ “he will be an overseer in the houses of kings and their works and his livelihood will be from nobles, and we have seen some of them abounding in secret intercourse with a noble woman so that because of her he attains wealth and goods, and she is his backer; some of them control the properties of women and their works.”
- ♄ “he will be one of those who stand up in probity in cities or [he will be] a calculator for everything, [and] he will stand healthy in [his] reasoning, and he will be praised for this, and [men] will resort to him.”

### 2.30 Mars in Another Planet's House

If ♂ is in the house or terms of:

- ♏ “he will be pleasant, courageous, agile, in what he improves, but he will squander his father's property and kill his younger brothers”
- ♌ “If ♂ is in ♌'s house or its term, he will be friendly with kings, beloved among them; if ♌ is aspecting ♂ which is in its house, then he will be one of the nobles and commanders of armies, a leader of soldiers and forces, and he will be ruling in cities, one who has ascended in nobility”
- ♀ “If ♂ is in ♀'s house or its term, then he will be a master of fornication, he will love the women of others, and he will harm his relatives, and he will rejoice in an evil sexual intercourse, and most of them [will be men] who murder their wives with their own hand and consider how the death of their women may occur”
- ♊ “If ♂ is in ♊'s house or term, then he will be reasonable, desirous of marriage, clear in [his] thinking, intelligent, but he will collect property illegally and will be poor and an ascetic in his work”
- ♎ “he will be sharp in his reasoning, a seeker for work and property except that his work and his livelihood will weaken and he will be chronically ill or will die a terrible death, and he will have a short life or little property, [but] will abound in disease; it is worse for one who is born in the daytime”
- ☉ “he will spoil his father's property and rob it, and he will be one of those who do difficult and unpleasant work in fire or iron, and his livelihood will be from this.



If ♂ and ♀ are both in a house of the ☉ or the ☿, they indicate the shortness of [his] life or the terribleness of [his] death”

### 2.31 Venus in Another Planet’s House

If ♀ is in a house or terms of:

- ♂ the person “will have intercourse with his brothers’ wives or women; if he is a slave he will be set free and will have intercourse with his mistress”
- ♂ “he will have power and property from [his] wife or the work of [his] wife, and some of them will be stewards for women and will amass wealth on this account, and he will rejoice and will be in a house of worship and will love his wife with a powerful love”
- ♂ “he [will be] one of those in whom greed and evil quarrels are stirred up and injury, and this misery will reach him from women, and he will have intercourse with a woman not his own, [but one who is] subservient or disgraced or a serving girl, and women will not be constant with him but it will confuse him”
- ♂ sometimes “he will rejoice in women and sometimes he will work for women, and an argument will come to him because of this, and some of them will be some of the masters of a craft and of painting and artisans of magnificent things, and they will sell perfume”

### 2.32 Mercury in Another Planet’s House

If ☿ is in a house or terms of:

- ♂ “he will be dumb or lisping or deaf, silent, [and] he will inform no one of what is in himself, [he will be] contemplative, inquiring about all the affairs of men

so that he will be enthusiastic about this and some of them will know the secrets of the book which [belong] to the people of religions, and some of them will be learned in the stars, and some of them will drive away birds [be augurs]”

♄ “he will possess dignity, [be] an orator, or control the affairs of kings or nobles, or instruct the people in words and arguments and judgments, and he will always be about the business of metropolises or kings”

♂ “he will be a fool, insignificant, a liar with no shame, and he will not believe in God or in good work[s and] he will love adultery, and some of them will act with perfidy, and some of them will keep company with magicians or confer with them or investigate their affair[s] in regard to measures, and they will refuse to receive religion, and the people will treat them as enemies who have no fidelity and no good reputation”

♀ “he will be welcome, pleasant, rejoicing, [and] he will do all his work [and] will hurry it up and will press on with it, and some of them will be learned or intuitive or wealthy or will make dye[s], and some of them will be learned in backgammon and the like; if ♄ is in a cardine free of the [☉’s] rays, then he will be intuitive, intelligent, acquisitive of property, needing everyone”

### 2.33 Sun or Moon in Another Planet’s House

#### Sun and Moon together in Another’s House

If the ☉ and ☾ are in a house or terms of:

♄ “and they are thus together, then he will be honest in [his] properties, but will have intercourse with his

brothers' women, and some of them will have intercourse with their mothers; in indicates similarly in nativities of women because she will have intercourse with her mother's husband or her sister's or one closer to her"

### Moon in Another Planet's House

If the ☾ is in a house or terms of:

- ♏ "he will be in difficulties or thwarted from work, dull in work and body, disgraced"
- ♊ "he will be daring, steadfast, a usurper of the property of others, and he will have no regard for truth and justice, but most of them will be masters of arms and murder, chieftains. But look at the planets' portions and the benefics' aspects because the benefics dissolve evil"
- ♀ "he will be handsome of face, pleasing, handsome in [his] eyes, agreeable, enjoyable [?] for everyone, especially if the sign is one of a human figure as then he will be a debaucher, wealthy in this, and scandal will reach him on this account, and together with this he will be good in [his] condition and livelihood"
- ♉ "he will be reasonable, a scribe, [and] profits will come to him from [his] works except that he will love [both] females and males and will have few children"

DELINEATION  
NOTE

### Sun in Another Planet's House

If the ☉ is in a house or terms of:

- ♊ "he will be afflicted with a difficult disease, but he will be good in [his] livelihood, strong in [his] work, [but] insignificant and in difficulties in it"
- ♀ "he will be a soothsayer, truthful in [his] visions, a man of discernment, learned in things, a calculator"

for the stars, but he will be moist in [his] body,  
abounding in anger”

✂ “he will be steadfast, insignificant, silent for a secret, a confidant except that he will be afflicted with disease and wetness”

*This which I have told you of the houses  
and the terms, if the house and the term  
agree, then it is more secure and more  
correct in judgments, if God [so] wishes.*

*The second book ends. Glory to God, the lord  
of the two worlds.*

*In the name of God, the compassionate, the merciful. [Here] begins the third book of Dorotheus which he wrote with respect to the haylaj<sup>2</sup> and the kadhkhudah<sup>3</sup>, which are the governor and the indicator<sup>4</sup> of the time of the years of life.*

### 3.1 The Indicator (haylij) and Governor (kadhkhudah)

This book is a bit of a nightmare to understand, the basic rules are jumbled in with definitions, delineations, and interpolated text across two chapters. In reading them I've often referred to Dykes *Carmen Astrologicum* and *Persian Nativities Vol. II* as well as Holden's *Abu'Ali Al-Khayyat: The Judgment of Nativities*, Hand's *Omar of Tiberias: Three Books on Nativities*, Deb Houldings Notes on Book III, Valens and Robert Zoller's DMA Course. As a result, the text in this section of the book has been extensively re-organized; an effort has been made to include references to the original chapter and line numbers.

### Definitions

Dorotheus describes some of the conditions that effect the ability of a planet to be effective (strong):

---

<sup>2</sup>The medieval *hyleg*.

<sup>3</sup>The medieval *alchocoden*.

<sup>4</sup>The terms and definitions have been transposed. The *governor* is the *kadhkhudah* or *alchocoden* while the *indicator* is the *haylaj* or *hyleg*.

<b>Eastern</b>	a planet at least $15^{\circ 1}$ from the ☉ and rising ahead of it and visible	1.4
<b>Western</b>	a planet at least $15^{\circ}$ from the ☉ and setting after it and visible	1.5
<b>Station</b>	stationing direct or retrograde within 7 days before or after birth greatly strengthens the planet	
<b>USB</b>	a planet less than $15^{\circ}$ from the ☉ is “under the ☉’s” rays or beams (usually referenced as USB); it is essentially invisible	1.6

Planets that are direct, eastern, and visible<sup>2</sup> are best at effecting what they signify.

### Possible Indicator (haylaj or hyleg)

Find the indicator first; begin with the ☉ in a day chart, the ☾ in a night chart *unless* the ☾ is New, Full, or making a phase<sup>3</sup>, in which case she will be the indicator. 1.10

If the chosen indicator does not receive an aspect from its term lord, triplicity lord<sup>4</sup>, domicile lord, exaltation lord, or decan lord then it cannot be used as the indicator; check the other light, the Ascendant, the Lot of Fortune 2.2 or the SAN in that order.

---

<sup>1</sup>The  $15^{\circ}$  is a generalized value; Dorotheus gives  $18^{\circ}$  for ♂,  $19^{\circ}$  for ♀ and the same is usually assumed (see Dykes) for ♀. Essentially, you want the planet to be visible, so the distance from the ☉ can vary depending on whether the planet is *superior* (♄, ♀, ♂) or *inferior* (♁, ♀) and also based on the birth latitude. It is sometimes necessary to check actual **sunrise-sunset times** for the day in question.

<sup>2</sup>see appendix B:Visibility

<sup>3</sup>*ibid.*

<sup>4</sup>It is not clear whether the aspect must be from the first triplicity lord or anyone of the three. I suspect it must be the first triplicity ruler, the one coinciding with the chart sect.

Once the indicator is identified, by default, its term lord or the lord in aspect, if it qualifies, becomes the governor (kadhkhudah or alcocoden).

### An Exception for the Lights

If either light is in its own domicile ( $\odot$  in  $\delta$ ,  $\text{D}$  in  $\text{E}$ ) and its term lord is in square or trine that light becomes the indicator and its term lord the governor<sup>1</sup> 1.24

### The Sun

In a day chart, the  $\odot$  is the default indicator unless it is found to be in one of the following situations:

- in the 8th or 7th in a feminine sign, look to the  $\text{D}$  1.15
- if cadent, look to the  $\text{D}$  and if it is also cadent, look to the Ascendant 1.21

### The Moon

In a day chart, if the  $\odot$  does not qualify as the indicator, the  $\text{D}$  will if she is found in one of the following situations:

- in the 10th or 11th in a feminine sign 1.17
- in the 7th or 8th regardless of sign 1.18

If the  $\text{D}$  is in the 12th or 9th, regardless of sign, look to the Ascendant<sup>2</sup> 1.21

In a night chart, the  $\text{D}$  is the default indicator unless it is found to be in one of the following situations:

- cadent or its lord is USB, in which case the  $\odot$  is the indicator if it is in the 4th or 5th, otherwise look to the Ascendant 1.19, 20

---

<sup>1</sup>Presumably if this is true for both lights you would need to use the sect light or the best positioned light or possibly, the light whose term lord had the closest aspect.

<sup>2</sup>The preceding definitions imply that the  $\text{D}$  must be above the horizon in a day chart and not cadent. As the  $\odot$  has already been disqualified we are to move on to examining the Ascendant.

### The Ascendant

If the ☉ or ☽ have been disqualified from being the indicator, or their lords have been disqualified from being the governor, examine the Ascendant degree. If its term lord is disqualified, examine the Ascendant's domicile lord and if it is USB [*or cadent?*], examine its [*remaining lords: triplicity, exaltation, decan?*]<sup>1</sup> 1.12

If the Ascendant doesn't qualify check the Lot of Fortune, if it doesn't qualify, check the SAN. 2.2

### Possible Governor (kadhkhudah or alcocoden)

If the lord of the indicator is found to be in one of the following situations it is disqualified, move on to the next possible governor:

- USB 1.18, 19
- cadent 1.11
- does not aspect the terms the indicator occupies 2.23

If all the of the indicator's rulers are disqualified, move on to the next possible indicator.

---

<sup>1</sup>Dorotheus then tells us to see if the place [*sign?*] of this lord is masculine or feminine but he does not say if one or the other disqualifies the lord.



### Contradictory or unclear text re: the indicator and governor

This is essentially text that did not make sense in the context in which it appeared.

#### Indications from the Sun

*Calculate if the ☉ is in the first degrees of ♃ and the lord of its [the ☉'s] term or house aspects it as this becomes the indicator.* 1.25

#### Indications from the Moon

If the ☾ on the third day after the birth is in the term of: 1.7

- a benefic which is in a good place trine the ☾ while the ☾ is in an angular or succedent place “then say that all of the nativity’s condition is good”
- either a benefic or malefic in a good place aspecting the ☾, “then it will be mediocre” 1.9
- a malefic which is in an angle while Fortune is opposite the ☾ “then say [that there is] no doubt that the nativity is bad” 1.8

#### Indications from the Ascendant

If the lord [*term or domicile? it’s not clear*] of the Ascendant is disqualified from being governor “then say [that there is] ruination in this nativity and that he [the native] will have no upbringing” unless there is a benefic in the ascendant sign within 15° of the Ascendant. 1.22,23

#### Other planets

*If ♂ and ♃ are in cardines or some of those that follow cardines or in the places which I* 1.26

*mentioned above or in their houses or in their terms or in their exaltations or in their triplicities or in their portions, then it will be good as [those] planets will rule in the nativity which are in their house[s] or term[s] or image[s] [decans] or exaltation[s] or triplicities.*

There has been some speculation that the above, coupled with the first chapter's opening paragraphs that describe various planet conditions, may mean any planet might act as the indicator (haylaj, hyleg) or that there is another technique used to identify a third planet that acts as the "ruler of the nativity." Later authors do occasionally try to flesh out such a technique but to my knowledge there is no one agreed on, practical technique.

**Longevity Example Chart 3.1.1**

This particular chart is dated to February 26, 381 CE JC according to Ben Dykes (CAD p17) and so could not possibly have been included in Dorotheus' original manuscript as he lived in the 1st century, not the 4th. The other nine charts in the text have been dated between 12 and 44 CE. Dykes also believes the chart is based on the sidereal zodiac, although the oblique ascensions given agree with the values computed using the tropical zodiac for the year 381.

The method described, and referred to as *circumambulation* or *prorogation*, measures distances in zodiacal longitude and rate of motion in oblique ascensions, converting motion to time at the rate of  $1^\circ$  of OA = 1 year; the technique is the source of modern primary directions and secondary progressions the difference being that primary directions use  $1^\circ$  of right ascension as the rate of motion and measure of a year while secondary progressions use one day of the  $\odot$ 's motion in the ephemeris as the measure of one year.

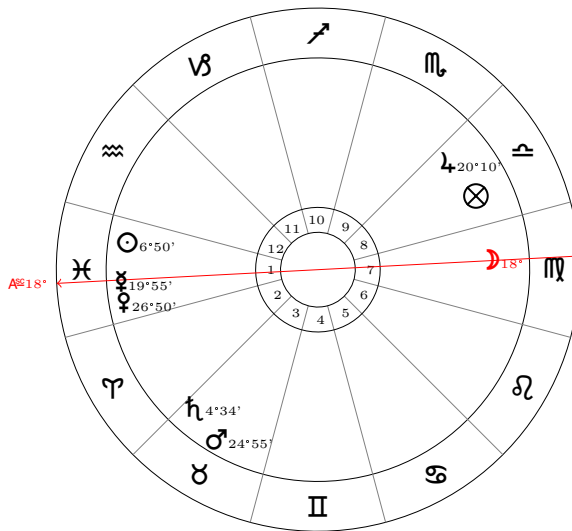


Figure 3.1: Longevity Example Chart 3.1.01

Figure 3.1 is the chart of a person “born in the ninety-sixth year of the years of Darinus [Diocletian] in the month of Mihr on the second day in one and a half equinoctial hours of daylight....in the 4th clime<sup>1</sup>”. The author uses the chart to “explain...the length of life and the number of years as [*he attempts*] [to compute it].”

*“I wanted to know the places of the haylaj among which he was born because they are five places, and none of the planets was in them except in the ascendant in which the ☉ was; and it is the best of places.”*

1.29

The author has not spelled out “the five places” at this point, at a guess he is referring to the 1st, 7th, 11th, 10th, and 9th(?). He says he chooses the 1st because the

<sup>1</sup>The ☿ is missing from the chart in the text, assuming the Ascendant and ☉ degrees are roughly accurate, it should be around 18-19 ♌.

☉ is there; that it is cadent by degree does not appear to matter, it is angular by whole sign. He then begins to direct the Ascendant (not the ☉ or its term lord) through the bounds.

“I wanted to know in how many years the ascendant would conjoin with the rays of ♂. I took the eighteen degrees of the ascendent and I found in the [tables for] my clime and the twelve parts [signs] [that] placed under it [was] three hundred and fifty-two [time] degrees and thirty seconds”

1.34-5

The Ascendant is at 18 ♄ and ♂ is at 24 ♃ 55, sending its sextile (✳) ray to 24♄55. The author wants to know how long it will take for the degree imprinted by ♂’s sextile ray to rise up, by primary (diurnal) motion, to the Ascendant degree. He uses a technique commonly called *circumambulation* or *prorogation* that relies on the use of “tables”, in this example, those for the 4th clime, to find the corresponding oblique ascension degrees for 18 ♄ and 24 ♃ 55. The 4th clime corresponds to Rhodes with a latitude of 36N<sup>1</sup>.

Parallax in Ptolemy’s Handy Tables			
Clima	Place	Geographical Latitude	Longest Daylight (h)
I	Meroe	16;27°	13
II	Soene	23;51°	13½
III	Lower Egypt	30;22°	14
IV	Rhodes	36; 0°	14½
V	Hellespont	40;56°	15
VI	Middle of Pontus	45; 1°	15½
VII	Borysthenes	48;32°	16

Figure 3.2: Ptolemy’s Climes

“Then I took the twenty-four degrees and fifty minutes where ♂ cast its rays to ♄ and I

1.36-7

<sup>1</sup>See [Verification of Parallax in Ptolemy’s Hand Tables](#) by José Chabás and Anne Tihon

*found the rising-times under this [to be] three hundred and fifty-six [time] degrees and forty-eight minutes”*

Dykes gives the date of the chart as 381 CE, using [Astro-Seek’s Online Calculator](#) to calculate the oblique ascensions for custom latitude 36N in the year 381 CE the values for the two longitudes are within a few minutes of those given in the text:

*“[S]o I subtracted the three hundred and fifty-two [degrees] and thirty [minutes] which belong to the ascendent, and there were left four [time] degrees and eighteen minutes. And I said that the degrees of the ascendent would conjoin with the sextile rays of ♂ in four years and a fifth and a tenth of a year.”*

From the Astro-seek tables (see Figure 3.3):

Traditional Astrology Online Calculator											
Latitude:		Year:	Zodiac:	Tables:		Values:					
Custom Lat & 0-30° Sign		381	Tropical zodiac	O.A. (Oblique Ascension)		Degrees		OK			
Custom latitude:											
36°		00'	N								
Sign*	♈	♉	♊	♋	♌	♍	♎	♏	♐	♑	♒
0°	0°00'	19°19'	42°09'	71°26'	106°36'	143°34'	180°00'	216°25'	253°23'	288°33'	317°50'
1°	0°37'	20°00'	43°01'	72°32'	107°50'	144°47'	181°12'	217°39'	254°36'	289°38'	318°41'
2°	1°14'	20°41'	43°53'	73°38'	109°03'	146°01'	182°24'	218°52'	255°50'	290°43'	319°32'
3°	1°52'	21°23'	44°46'	74°45'	110°17'	147°14'	183°37'	220°06'	257°03'	291°47'	320°22'
4°	2°29'	22°05'	45°39'	75°52'	111°31'	148°28'	184°49'	221°20'	258°16'	292°51'	321°12'
5°	3°07'	22°47'	46°33'	76°59'	112°45'	149°41'	186°00'	222°34'	259°29'	293°55'	322°02'
6°	3°45'	23°29'	47°27'	78°07'	113°59'	150°54'	187°14'	223°47'	260°42'	294°58'	322°51'
7°	4°22'	24°12'	48°21'	79°15'	115°13'	152°07'	188°27'	225°01'	261°54'	296°00'	323°39'
8°	5°00'	24°55'	49°16'	80°23'	116°27'	153°21'	189°39'	226°15'	263°07'	297°03'	324°28'
9°	5°38'	25°38'	50°12'	81°32'	117°41'	154°34'	190°52'	227°29'	264°19'	298°04'	325°16'
10°	6°16'	26°22'	51°08'	82°41'	118°55'	155°47'	192°04'	228°43'	265°31'	299°05'	326°03'
11°	6°53'	27°05'	52°04'	83°50'	120°09'	157°00'	193°17'	229°57'	266°43'	300°06'	326°50'
12°	7°31'	27°50'	53°01'	85°00'	121°23'	158°13'	194°30'	231°11'	267°55'	301°07'	327°37'
13°	8°10'	28°34'	53°58'	86°10'	122°37'	159°25'	195°42'	232°25'	269°06'	302°06'	328°23'
14°	8°48'	29°19'	54°56'	87°20'	123°51'	160°38'	196°55'	233°39'	270°17'	303°06'	329°09'
15°	9°26'	30°04'	55°54'	88°31'	125°06'	161°51'	198°08'	234°53'	271°28'	304°05'	329°55'
16°	10°04'	30°50'	56°53'	89°42'	126°20'	163°04'	199°21'	236°08'	272°39'	305°03'	330°40'
17°	10°43'	31°36'	57°53'	90°53'	127°34'	164°17'	200°34'	237°22'	273°49'	306°01'	331°25'
18°	11°22'	32°22'	58°52'	92°04'	128°48'	165°29'	201°46'	238°36'	274°59'	306°58'	332°09'
19°	12°00'	33°09'	59°53'	93°16'	130°02'	166°42'	202°59'	239°50'	276°09'	307°55'	332°54'
20°	12°39'	33°56'	60°54'	94°28'	131°16'	167°55'	204°12'	241°04'	277°18'	308°51'	333°37'
21°	13°18'	34°43'	61°55'	95°40'	132°30'	169°07'	205°25'	242°18'	278°27'	309°47'	334°21'
22°	13°58'	35°31'	62°56'	96°52'	133°44'	170°20'	206°38'	243°32'	279°36'	310°43'	335°04'
23°	14°37'	36°20'	63°59'	98°05'	134°58'	171°32'	207°52'	244°46'	280°44'	311°38'	335°47'
24°	15°17'	37°08'	65°01'	99°17'	136°12'	172°45'	209°05'	246°00'	281°52'	312°32'	336°30'
25°	15°57'	37°57'	66°04'	100°30'	137°25'	173°57'	210°18'	247°14'	283°00'	313°26'	337°12'
26°	16°37'	38°47'	67°08'	101°43'	138°39'	175°10'	211°31'	248°28'	284°07'	314°20'	337°54'
27°	17°17'	39°37'	68°12'	102°56'	139°53'	176°22'	212°45'	249°42'	285°14'	315°13'	338°36'
28°	17°57'	40°27'	69°16'	104°09'	141°07'	177°35'	213°58'	250°56'	286°21'	316°06'	339°18'
29°	18°38'	41°18'	70°21'	105°23'	142°20'	178°47'	215°12'	252°09'	287°27'	316°58'	339°59'
30°	19°19'	42°09'	71°26'	106°36'	143°34'	180°00'	216°25'	253°23'	288°33'	317°50'	340°40'

Figure 3.3: OA table for Chart 3.1.1 calculated on Astro-seek

18♎ 352°28' vs 352°30'  
24♎ 356°52' vs 356°48'

The difference between 352°30' and 356°48' is 4°18' or 4 years, 3 months (18/60 = 0.3 x 12 = 3.6) and 18 (.6 x 30) days<sup>1</sup>.

“Because ♀ [is] in this term, it dissolves the fear and misery that ♂ indicates and he will not die, but this misery will pass by him because whenever the rays of the benefics are

<sup>1</sup>Dykes explains the author’s calculation as 18/60 = .3, 1/5 = .2 and 1/10 = .1 so 4 years plus 1/5 and 1/10 of a year (p.184 fn 34). It computes to the same 4 years + 365 x (1/5 + 1/10) = 4 years + 365 x 3/10 = 4 years 109.5 days or 4 years, 3 months, 18 days

*found with the rays of the malefics, then the benefic dissolves whatever the malefic indicates; but if the malefic and its term cast rays without the benefics, then it will not be long before he dies."*

The sextile of ♂ falls at 24 ♄ 55 in the terms of ♂ which run from 19-27° ♄. ♀ is sitting at 25 ♄ 50 so she is in the same terms as the sextile ray and therefore removes its malice.

Next the author looked at when the Ascendant would contact 4 ♂ 34, the degree the body of ♄ was projecting itself to at the time of the birth. Using the same set of tables for the 4th clime, the oblique ascension of 4 ♂ 34 was found to be 22° 21' (the Astro-seek table yields 22°23.8' if interpolation is used between 4 ♂ and 5 ♂). Taking the difference between the Ascendant's OA of 352°30' and ♄'s OA of 22°21' leaves 29°51' equating to 29 years, 1/2 + 1/4 + 1/10th of a year or 29 years 10 months and 10 days, the age at which the Ascendant will conjoin with ♄'s degree.

*"Because the ☉ cast its rays from sextile to the first term of ♂ where ♄ was staying, the heat of the ☉ will drive away all the maleficence of ♄, and the harsh misery will pass him by, and he will not die."* 1.50

The first terms of ♂ run from 0-7°; ♄ projects to 4♄ and the ☉, at 6♄, throws his sextile to 6♄ so both ♄ and the ☉'s ray fall in the same set of terms. The ☉ is apparently acting as a benefic here.

Next the author looked to see when the Ascendant would enter ♄'s terms in ♂ which begin at 22♄, followed by it coming to the degree of the body of ♂ at 24♄. He 1.51-7



found the OA of  $\text{♂}$  in  $24\text{♄}55$  to be  $37^{\circ}43'$  (the Astro-seek table gives  $37^{\circ}08'$  for  $24\text{♄}$  and  $37^{\circ}57'$  for  $25\text{♄}$  so  $37^{\circ}$  and  $45'$   $((57-8) \times 55/60)$ ). He found the difference between this and the OA of the Ascendant to be  $45^{\circ}13'$  ( $37^{\circ}43' + 360 - 352^{\circ}30'$ ) or 45 years and  $1/6$  and  $1/10$  of a year or roughly 45 years 2 months and 19 days.

*Because ♀ also cast its rays to this place from sextile, it will dissolve the maleficance of ♂, and he will not die because of ♀'s aspect, and whatever of [its] rays it cast to this place, by means of them this misery will pass [him] by.* 1.57

In  $\text{♄}$ , the terms of  $\text{♄}$  run from  $22-26^{\circ}$ , ♀, at  $26\text{♄}55$  throws her sextile to  $26\text{♄}$ , within the same terms as ♂ and so protecting against any misery he might cause.

Neither malefic throws its rays to the rest of  $\text{♄}$  or to any degrees in  $\text{II}$  as both  $\text{♄}$  and ♂ are in  $\text{♄}$  and the Greeks did not recognize the semi-sextile ( $30^{\circ}$ ) as an aspect, as well, there is no mitigation between  $\text{♄}$  and  $\text{II}$ , so he moves on to the sextile of  $\text{♄}$  at  $4\text{♄}34$ . He found the OA of the degree to be  $76^{\circ}20'$  (the Astro-seek tables yield  $75^{\circ}56'$ ) and the distance between the Ascendant OA to be  $83^{\circ}50'$  ( $76^{\circ}20' + 360 - 352^{\circ}30'$ ) or roughly 83 years 10 months and 4 days. 1.55-64

*Because the ☉ aspected from trine and cast [its] rays to this term in which are the rays of ♄, it will dissolve the misfortune this time, [but] he will die then when the rays of ♂ reach it [the ascendant].*

The first degrees of  $\text{♄}$  (0-6) are ruled by ♂.  $\text{♄}$ 's sextile is at  $4\text{♄}$  the ☉'s trine falls at  $6\text{♄}50$ , within the same terms so he will "dissolve the misfortune" caused

by ♄ but when the Ascendant reaches the sextile of ♂ at 24♌, in the terms of ♄ (19-25 ♌) he says ♂ kills the person. ♀'s sextile falls to 26♌, in the terms of ♄ but ♄'s square falls at 20♌ in the same terms. Why does it not protect the person from death? Most likely because the person, by this time, is fairly old. The OA of 20♌ is 94°28' minutes, taking the distance from the OA of the Ascendant gives 101°48' or over 101 years old.

### Longevity Example Chart 3.2.1

This chart example was most likely in Dorotheus' original text. Dykes, following Holden, dates it to October 2, 44 CE 8:15:01 AM JC using the tropical zodiac (CAD p87). Unfortunately Dorotheus did not give the Oblique Ascensions or yearly values for the example so we can't easily test for the clime.

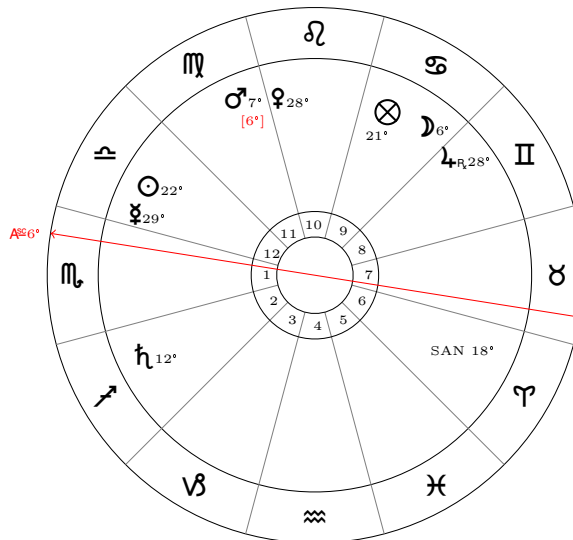


Figure 3.4: Longevity Example Chart 3.2.01

*Because the nativity was diurnal, I looked in search of the haylaj at the ☉, and found the ☉ cadent. I also looked at the ♃, and I found it cadent. I found the lot of fortune and the fullness [of the ♃] also in cadent[s]. There was nothing obvious from which the haylaj might be found except the ascendent.* 2.19-22

The author began looking for the indicator by examining the ☉ as the chart is diurnal (☉ above the horizon) but ended up rejecting it as a possible indicator (hyleg), along with the ♃, ☊, and SAN, because they were all cadent. He ignores the fact that the 9th (holding Fortune and the ♃) is a good house.

*The lord of the term of the ascendent, ☊, was above the earth and near the East<sup>1</sup> and the four parts which have been mentioned and [in] the place of the good fortune aspecting the ascendent and casting [its] rays to that term in which the ascendent is, from above it, because it casts to the house and term together; if that casting were to the house only, it would not have this power. There is left of the term one degree that belongs to ☊.* 2.23

The Ascendant is at 6♌, in the terms of ☊'s (0-6 ♌); making him the governor. ☊ more than qualifies as he is more than 15° from the ☉ and is rising before the ☉ (east), in a good place (11th), and sends his sextile ray to the ascendant.

---

<sup>1</sup>Pingree appears to interpret this as ☊ being in the eastern hemisphere of the chart or nearer the the Ascendant, in the east but it is more apt to be a reference to the planet being *eastern* or rising before the ☉.

There seems to be a slight error in the text as we are told  $\text{♂}$  is at  $7\text{M}$  but that he casts his ray to his own terms, which end at  $6\text{M}$ , with one degree of  $\text{♂}$ 's terms in  $\text{M}$  left. If that is true  $\text{♂}$  would need to be in, at the least,  $6\text{M}$ , and his sextile at  $6\text{M}$ .

The second last line of the paragraph implies that if the aspect falls to the house only, and not the term,  $\text{♂}$  would not “have this power” to be the governor. That is a limitation that was not mentioned elsewhere.

*So  $\text{♂}$  takes over the governorship of the pro-rogation and ray. Until this degree in its pro-rogation and its ray ends without the ray of any [other],  $\text{♂}$  indicates in this year injury from fire and disease. Even though  $\text{♂}$  is in a good place, it is necessary that it indicate like this. This misfortune is worse for him [the native] because the  $\text{♂}$  aspects it [ $\text{♂}$ ]. If it were not that the  $\text{☉}$  stands between its ray and the ascendent and breaks the power of  $\text{♂}$ , it would be worse.*

2.25-39

As the governor,  $\text{♂}$  manages the beginning of the native's life, which was prone to “injury from fire and diseases” (general significations of  $\text{♂}$ ) regardless of the fact that  $\text{♂}$  occupies a good place (11th) and the risk is made worse by the fact that the  $\text{♂}$  ( $6\text{S}$ ) is  $\text{♂}$ . Although the text does not mention it, she is also  $\Delta\text{Asc}$ . The  $\text{♂}$  and the  $\text{Asc}$  both signify the physical body,  $\text{♂}$  (injury) aspecting both increases the risk of physical harm.

We are then told that the  $\text{☉}$  “stands between its ray and the ascendent and breaks the power of  $\text{♂}$ ”, reducing the risk. The  $\text{☉}$  is at  $22\text{A}$ , he is in the 12th, averse to the 1st so he cannot cast a ray there, the only way the  $\text{☉}$  can break  $\text{♂}$ 's ray is by his body since, as Deb

Houlding points out, he is within  $15^\circ$  of the ascendent (DH p9) which means the  $A^{sc}$  would be combust, falling within the  $\odot$ 's light or glow, which in this case appears to protect the Ascendant from  $\sigma$  ray rather than harm the Ascendant itself<sup>1</sup>.

*Then the prorogation of the ascendent comes to the term of ♀ till the eleventh degree. Because ♂ has left and ♀ has entered it is necessary to mix the power of these two together. Because of this the native will be blessed with love from his parents because both of these [planets] are in a good place, and moreover pain will reach him.*

2.30-32

The ascendent will reach the terms of ♀ when it moves into  $7\mathfrak{M}_\bullet$ . While the text says the power of ♂ and ♀ must be mixed because the terms of ♂ have been left, need to also keep in mind that ♂ will share the times by sextile with ♀ until the ray of another planet is met, which won't happen until the  $A^{sc}$  enters the terms of  $\mathfrak{h}$  ( $24\text{--}29\mathfrak{M}_\bullet$ ) where ♀ throws her square to  $28\mathfrak{M}_\bullet$ .

That the native will be loved by his parents is most likely indicated by ♀ (love) determined to parents by her opposition to the 4th (parents) and trine to  $\mathfrak{h}$ , ruler of the 4th. As well, ♀ is in the terms of ♂ herself, an indication she will show her significations when ♂ is ruling the times. As ♂ is still sharing in the times there continues to be a risk of bodily harm.

*Then till the nineteenth degree is the prorogation of ☿, and in this period he will increase [his] learning and culture and the like.*

2.33

---

<sup>1</sup>Evidence combustion can only harm planets?

The terms of ☿ in ♍ run from 11° to 18°. During this period the native will be occupied with mercurial pursuits, namely “learning and culture and the like.” ♂’s is still sharing by sextile but his influence is not mentioned.

*The prorogation at puberty reaches ♄, and it will indicate praise on account of [his] culture and good from [his] eloquence and the manifestation of [his] ways which are pleasing to people. Even though ♄ is retrograde in motion and does not aspect the ☽ and the ascendent, this will not decrease it because, whenever the planets are thus, their power is weakened and its gift is muddled. If ♄ were in a better place than this, it would increase the good.*

2.34

The terms of ♄ in ♍ run from 19° to 23°, when the  $A^{\text{sc}}$  enters these degrees the things signified by ♄ will predominate; however, they will not be as good as they could be since ♄ is retrograde, does not directly aspect the ☽ or  $A^{\text{sc}}$ , and is in a bad place (8th). Again, there is no direct mention of ♂ influence even though he continues to share by sextile.

*The the prorogation comes to ♄ while ♀ casts [its] rays to the twenty-seventh degree of ♍ from quartile<sup>1</sup>, so that ♄ and ♀ govern this prorogation together. ♄ indicates his slowness in work and disease and distance from his land and grief and obstruction and difficulty, and this is worse because ♂ is elevated over ♄. If it were not that ♄ aspects ♄ it would be worse.*

2.37-39

---

<sup>1</sup>♀’s degree is given as 28♌ in the chart description which still would throw a square to ♄’s terms in ♍.

When the Ascendant enters  $\mathfrak{h}$ 's terms, which run from  $24^\circ$  to  $29\mathfrak{m}$ , he will share the times with  $\mathfrak{f}$ , who takes over from  $\mathfrak{o}$  because her square falls at  $28\mathfrak{m}$ . The period will predominately be marked by "slowness" ( $\mathfrak{h}$ ), "obstruction, difficulty" ( $\square$ ), in "work" ( $\mathfrak{h}$  in 2nd of livelihood,  $\mathfrak{f}$  in 10th of career), "disease, grief" ( $\mathfrak{f}$  rules 12th) and "distant from his land" ( $\mathfrak{h}$  indicating absence?) All this is made worse by  $\mathfrak{o}$ 's square overcoming  $\mathfrak{h}$  in the radix and slightly lessened by  $\mathfrak{l}$ 's opposition to  $\mathfrak{h}$ .

*Because of the place of  $\mathfrak{h}$  his mother will die in this period...*

2.40

This is a little odd at first until you realize that (a)  $\mathfrak{f}$  rules the mother in a day chart, (b) the Lot of the Mother falls at  $14\mathfrak{m}$ <sup>1</sup>, in the 8th from the 4th (parents), and (c) it is square  $\mathfrak{h}$  whose place in the 2nd also signifies death by his opposition to the 8th. As well, in 1.15 we are told that the parent who will die first is the one whose lot is in the same place as a malefic or is opposed or square to a malefic. The Lot of the Mother is in  $\mathfrak{m}$ , with  $\mathfrak{o}$ , and is square  $\mathfrak{h}$ . And, while the Lot of the Father at  $26\mathfrak{m}$ <sup>2</sup> is in a similar position (in the same sign as the malefic  $\mathfrak{h}$  and square the malefic  $\mathfrak{o}$ ) the aspect between  $\mathfrak{h}$  and the Lot of the Mother is stronger ( $2^\circ$ ) than the one between the Lot of the Father and  $\mathfrak{o}$  ( $21^\circ$ ), the Lot of the Mother is actually in the sign of the parent's death,  $\mathfrak{f}$ , the main significator of the mother in a day chart has a share of the times, the  $\odot$ , main significator of the father in a day chart, does not.

---

<sup>1</sup>The Lot of the Mother is given in 1.14 as being calculated from  $\mathfrak{f}$  to the  $\mathfrak{D}$  projected from the Ascendant (the text actually says to subtract the difference from the Ascendant "by day" but this is likely an error, the majority of other sources says to add it.)

<sup>2</sup>The Lot of the Father is given in 1.13 as being calculated from the  $\odot$  to  $\mathfrak{h}$  and projected from the Ascendant.

*... but he will acquire goods because ♄ indicates these, and he will marry a wife with a dowry, and [a child] will be born to him who will live a short while and die in the third year; his enjoyment of women and children will be from ♀, but his lament and the death of his child will be from ♄.*

The acquisition of a wife is shown by ♀ indicating a “wife” by her nature and by being ruler of the 7th (spouse, marriage). Goods and a dowry, by ♄ (property) in opposition to the 8th (wife’s money). Children are shown by ♄ ruling the 5th (children). The child’s life and death is shown by ♄ in the 8th (death), where it is retrograde and acting as an accidental malefic (a benefic connected with bad places or severely injured). Zoller taught that an accidental malefic was most likely to give a benefit according to its nature and then, if retrograde, take it away.

The “three years” probably comes from the degrees 27 (♀’s position) minus 24 (beginning of ♄’s term) although it seems to be a bit of a fudge as he originally gave ♀’s degree as 28 and normally oblique ascension values, not longitudinal degrees, would be used to time the event.

*Then the prorogation arrives at ♄, the first term, which is the house of ♄ and its term. Because ♄ makes this place its house and its term, it governs the prorogation alone without any [other] of the planets [and] it increases its power. It indicates for the native leadership and honor among groups of men, and his elevation among them.*

2.41-43

This adds another wrinkle to “who” actually governs the times. Normally it would be the new term lord and



the planet ruling by ray (in this case ♀) but here we are told that because ♄ is both the domicile ruler and the term lord he “governs the prorogation alone.”

*Because ♄ is in the twelfth degree, it indicates the last day of his life, and he will live after the twelfth degree for forty-eight nights because ♄ is in the beginning of the degree [at 12°8']. 2.44*

The person will die when the Ascendant meets the body of ♄ at 12♌. The 48 nights comes from 8 minutes /60 x 365 days. While ♄ is in the terms of ♄ (0-11♌) ♄, in the 8th of death, has been shown to be an accidental malefic who does not throw a ray to the same terms and neither does ♀ (at 28♌), the other benefic.

### Additional Advice on Prorogations

The author advises us to look not only at the prorogation of the Ascendant but also at the prorogation of the ♄:

*...because the conjunction of the ♄'s degree with the malefics indicates misery, especially if with this the benefics do not aspect as, if they do aspect, they dissolve misery and death 1.66*

As well we are told...

*It is necessary for you to look at the transit of the planets and the revolution of years<sup>1</sup>; in these sometimes it makes him miserable and spoils [his] life, but we do not find this peculiarity in everyone [of the books]. I sought for 1.67-68*

---

<sup>1</sup>This most likely refers to the practice of *profecting the chart* (turning the chart at the rate of one sign per year) which is described in Book IV.

*this in a long period of years and I suffered every misery so that I might write it down.*

And that we need to pay special attention to a planet's latitude:

*Look at the casting of the rays in latitude also because sometimes a planet is aspecting from opposition, and if you calculate it in latitude and you find one (planet) in the south, the other in the north, then this is not in opposition and also does not cast [its] rays, which according to this indicates misery. Also if you find both the ☉ and the ☾ in the sixth or the eighth or the twelfth and the malefics aspect [them], then they indicate death when their degrees conjoin with malefics. But if they are in a bad place but are not injured, and you find the malefics casting [their] rays close to their degrees, then the misery which would be will pass by, and he will not die of it.*

1.69-71

The rays of planets at different *latitudes* reach the various longitudinal degrees at different times depending on how far they are to the north or south of the ecliptic, which can completely alter the timing and or even completion of aspects i.e. planets that look as though they are nearing an aspect may actually be well past it.

And lastly, we have a loose summary of the technique:

*If you want to know how each planet increases the nativity and how it diminishes it, then look at the transit of the planets and which aspects the haylaj from right or left, and [look] at the term of the ascendent and at the lord*

2.45

*of the ascendent's term and the planets which are in it.*

The above implies we should always direct the Ascendant, whether it is the indicator (haylaj, hyleg) or not.

*Consider well the rays, whether of benefics or of malefics or mixed, because if the rays are of malefics without benefics' then it is bad. See which [planet] casts [its] rays in aspect or in being with it [the haylaj?], and in how many degrees of rising-times in the clime in which you are it will arrive at the prorogation. Consider the planet which casts [its] rays to the planet which aspects it [the haylaj?] or [is] with it and the lord of the prorogation; then mix them together in proportion to their maleficence and their beneficence and their power in the places and the planets' aspect of them and their portions and their terms and their houses, and judge in accordance with how you find them.*

2.46-48

*The third book of the books of Dorotheus is finished. Praise to God—He alone deserves praise and merits it.*

*In the name of God, the compassionate, the merciful, to Whom I have recourse. The fourth of the books of Dorotheus, relating to the transfer of years.*

Pingree does not break the this book into chapters, here it is broken into sections that follow Dykes chapter numbering.

4.1 Profections

*When a native is born, the lord of the year is the lord of the house [ascendent] in which the native was born. Thus count from the ascendent a year for each sign until you reach the year which you desire; the lord of that house is the lord of the year.*

4.1-2

Place	Age on Birthday								
1st	0	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96
2nd	1	13	25	37	49	61	73	85	97
3rd	2	14	26	38	50	62	74	86	98
4th	3	15	27	39	51	63	75	87	99
5th	4	16	28	40	52	64	76	88	100
6th	5	17	29	41	53	65	77	89	101
7th	6	18	30	42	54	66	78	90	102
8th	7	19	31	43	55	67	79	91	103
9th	8	20	32	44	56	69	80	92	104
10th	9	21	33	45	57	70	81	93	105
11th	10	22	34	46	58	71	82	94	106
12th	11	23	35	47	59	72	83	95	107

Table 4.1: Profections

Dorotheus calls it the “transfer of years” but the method described is commonly called *profection*. The radix chart is turned at the rate of one whole sign per year. The domicile lord of that sign becomes the “lord of the year” (LoY). Essentially, the zodiac “turns” at the rate of one sign per year, rising up so that a new sign occupies the first house on each successive birthday such that, on your 1st birthday the sign occupying the radix 2nd house moves to occupy the 1st place, on your 2nd birthday, the sign occupying the radix 3rd moves to occupy the 1st place, and so on until at the end of 12 years the original ascendant sign is back occupying the 1st place, and again at the end of 24 years, 36 years, etc.

*[A]nd the beginning of the year is always when the ☉ enters the beginning of the minute in which it was on the day of the native's nativity.* 1.4

The new year, for each birthday, begins when the ☉ holds the same degree and minute it held at birth so if you are born on July 13 with the ☉ at 20°30' then each “new year” for you will begin exactly when the ☉ re-occupies that degree and minute on your birthday or the closest day to your birthday<sup>1</sup>.

### Lord of the Year (LOY)

*Look at the lord of this sign<sup>2</sup>, whether it is a benefic or a malefic, and in the base-nativity how its position was and in which foundation it was. From the base-nativity is known what* 1.3-4

---

<sup>1</sup>Depending on the actual time and place where you were born the actual day the ☉ return's to its birth position maybe earlier or later than the original calendar day of your birth.

<sup>2</sup>The profected sign.

*is concerning him [the native] at the beginning  
of the year*

The general condition of the year depends on the condition of the lord of the year as it is found in the radix. We are told that if the lord of the year is:

- western [*setting into the ☉*] then “misfortune will reach the native” 1.5
- USB (invisible) by being conjunct the ☉ or retrograde and invisible by being in *curtailed passage*<sup>1</sup> there will be misfortune but if the planet is direct in motion “it will be better for him and it will be good” 1.6-7
- in his own domicile or if the ☉ or ☾ aspect the profection sign from a sign of the same triplicity there will be no harm 1.8
- in the sign of an enemy, the person “will be sick, and injury and loss with respect to his property will reach him” 1.9

### **In bad condition**

The form the misfortune takes depends on which planet is acting as the lord of the year:

- ♂ “his reasoning and his thought will diminish, and his reasoning will drain off to the right and left and various places, and some blood and iron and nose-bleed will reach him, or [a defect] in his reasoning and his logic and sometimes disease and injury will be difficult, or he will go on a journey in which [there will be] no good and no profit, and he will be in exile from his city” 1.10

---

<sup>1</sup>See Appendix B: Visibility

- ♄ in unfortunate condition and “above the earth, then 1.11  
 it is bad with respect to [his] property and disease  
 will reach him in his body for cold, and pleurisy and  
 injury and his property will diminish, and some-  
 times a sting will happen to him and also evil will  
 reach him from work in his hand[s], and frustration  
 in everything, and worry and grief and disease will  
 reach him from his work”
- ♃ “he will have little greed for property, and his prop- 1.12  
 erty will diminish without it being robbed and with-  
 out his being pleased by it, but so that the will be  
 pleased or will have kindness from the town of his  
 fathers or from [his] children”
- ♀ “injury will reach him from women, and quarrels 1.13  
 and an ugly blemish”
- ☿ if USB, “injury will reach him from commerce or 1.14  
 from an associate or from a book and computation  
 or from slaves, and his hope will be cut off except  
 for what God wills, and he will be told what he  
 should not make, and sometimes property and the  
 good will be offered to him, but he will not receive  
 it”

### In good condition

The form the good will take also depends on the good condition (eastern, direct, not USB) of the lord of the year and which planet holds the role:

- ♂ he will make a quick success of any work he under- 1.17  
 takes during the year and “the man will increase in  
 [his] reasoning”
- ♄ the person “will be an owner of land and crops and 1.18  
 plants and everything new, and he will dig canals  
 and rivers”

- ♄ “he will have a good reputation among nobles, and every work in his hand will be completed and he will be exalted above the nobles, and if children are judged for him, then they will inherit their father’s property” 1.19
- ♀ “joy and marriage and good will reach him on account of women” 1.20
- ♄ “he will accumulate property and attain good from wisdom and opinion and science and a good reputation, with the help of God” 1.21

### Planets in or Aspecting the Profected Sign

Indications for the year are also given by planets in or aspecting the sign of the profected ascendant:

- ♄ the person “will have a bad reputation and there will reach him folly and injury and hostility from men and [his] city, and some of them the government will be angry at and treat as an enemy” 1.23
- ♂ if the profected sign contains ♂ and ♄ and “something similar” to ♂’s aspecting ♄’s place occurs; “calamity and grief” will reach the person and “he will be afraid of kings and their anger” 1.26, 28
- ♄, ♂ if both malefics are in the profected sign, the person “will not work at anything, but will run away and will be discovered in a crime [leading] to exile and haste [in departing]” 1.29
- ♄ “if children are necessary for him, then he will have a son-in-law as well and his property will increase” 1.27
- ♀ the year “is not maleficent, but is beneficent, admirable, so that if he has attained [the age of] marriage, he will marry and will have children, if [♀] is good in its position in the base[-nativity]” 1.30
- ♄ “he will attain good, and [children] will be born to him. If ♄ aspect it, then he will be ashamed of his



children and will grieve on account of [his] slaves, and murder and grief will reach him”

- ▷ if ♀ is aspecting “then disease will reach this [person] and his body will waste away. If ☿ also aspects ♀ “it will be worse for him, his work will increase, and murder and sorrow and disasters from the dead will reach him” 1.33

### Profecion Reaching an Angle

Indications from the profected sign being a sign found originally on an angle:

- ASC if ♄ and ♀ are aspecting the sign “then good and honor and joy and children will reach the native, and he will marry a wife” and if ♀ and ♂ are in aspect, “his property and his good will diminish, and he will grieve for his relatives” 1.35
- ☾ if the profected year is in the sign on the radix 4th and contains or is aspected by ♀, “then injury and hostility from men will reach him, and the evil will debilitate him; if this is [the situation] and ♂ aspects it also, then evil will be worse, some cutting with iron will reach him or strangulation or burning in fire or sweat and fever, if this is necessary for him. If ♄ aspects these malefics, then the disease will be minimized” 1.24-5
- ☾, DSC if ♀ is in the sign or aspects the sign from the 4th or 7th “then this is a difficult indication, and a severe pain or grief for [his] property will reach him. If ♂ is with it [♀], then it is worse, blood and disasters from fire will reach him, and hot diseases will reach him, and he will fall from a distant place, and he will not attain good, or he will be like the form of a madman” 1.38

♁ if a malefic is in or aspecting the sign, “then every evil and misfortune will reach this native and no good will reach him [save] from God” 1.39

### The Profected 7th

If the profected 7th contains ♄ or ♂ there will be no good in the year; if ♀ and ♃ are in it, the year is “good and elevated” 1.40-2

### Delineating Months

The instructions on how to find the profected days and months is not clear (see the next section) but it does seem clear from the following that they should be delineated in much the same manner as the profected year.

*Similarly [in the case of] the months also, if the malefics aspect them or are in them, then there is no good in it also. If the benefics aspect them, then it diminishes from the evil of the malefics. If the benefics are not aspecting, then the malefic will destroy the mother of that native in that month<sup>1</sup>.* 1.43-5

### Unclear Instructions

There are other instructions, purportedly from Valens<sup>2</sup>, for finding the “sign that is the ascendent of the year” as well as for finding the month and day.

---

<sup>1</sup>It is not clear why a malefic in the sign of the profected month, not aspected by a benefic, should kill the person’s mother. The statement appears to be out of context.

<sup>2</sup>Anything attributed to Valens must have come directly from the original translator of the Dorotheus text (not Pingree, who is translating that earlier translators work), and so cannot be attributed directly to Dorotheus.

The conflicting instructions can be found in lines 15-16, and 46 thru 64. Most appear to infer the instructions relate to calculating Solar and Lunar revolutions. Here is the text, for reference:

*Valens also said: Look at the planet which is the lord of that year; if it is seen on the day on which the ☉ enters the minute in which it is on the day of the native's birth, then see at that hour in which this degree rises what [is] the ascendent, which [is] the sign which rises from the East. Look at where the ☿ is an in which sign it is, then know to how many [degrees] it is from that degree in which it was on the day of the native's birth; then make that sign the ascendent of the year.* 1.15-16

*Now I will make the matter of months clear to you so that you will know them. If you want to know this, then mark off from the sign and degree and minute in which the ☿ was at the hour of the native's birth, then subtract it from the ascendent<sup>1</sup>; wherever the number is used up, know which of the seven is the lord of that sign which you have reached, and this planet will be the lord of the month at the hour of the native's birth.* 1.46-47

*If the lord of the month is in a good place, rejoices in it, and is strong in its light, and was thus in in the base-nativity, then it is good. If it was in a good place in the base-nativity but is in a bad place when you look<sup>2</sup>, then the* 1.48-50

---

<sup>1</sup>From the year's projected ascendent?

<sup>2</sup>Compare the planet position to its radix position and its position in the turned chart?

*matter of this native is middling between this [and that]. If it was in a place without good in the base-nativity and is in a place without good when you look, then the maleficence is strong, there is no good in it; it will be worse for this [native] if it is not visible in the East and is under the ☉'s light<sup>1</sup>.*

*If the ☿ is the lord of the month, look at the ☿ on what side [of the ecliptic] it is. If it is ascending and increasing in counting, then it is good, but if it is descending and decreasing in counting, then its condition is middling between this [and that], but if it is in a decrease in light and is increasing in counting, then there is not good in it, and it is worst for this [native] if it is increasing in light and decreasing in counting. Together with this look also at the planets; if the ☉ is lord of the month, then it is good if it is increasing with regard to the length of daylight, but it is worse for this [native] if it is decreasing from the length of daylight. It is necessary together with this that you look at the witnesses of the planets.*

1.51-54

### Ruler of the Days

Dorotheus gives two methods for arriving at the ruler of the profected day.

*If you want to know the ruler of the days, see where the ☉ and ☿ are at the time for*

1.55-56

---

<sup>1</sup>Believe this refers to the planet's condition in the radix. A radix planet in bad condition can get some relief if it is in a better house in the turned chart and be in worse straits if it is in a bad place in both the radix and the turned chart.

*which you wish to know this, then count from the ☉ to the ♃, then cast it from that which was the ascendant at the hour of the native's birth. Wherever that number is used up, see which of the planets [is] the lord of that sign as it is the ruler of the days.*

Believe this means we are to look at where the ☉ and ♃ are on the day in question, count the signs between the two and then count the same number of signs from the radix Ascendant; the ruler of the sign we end on then becomes the ruler of the day. For example, if the ☉ is in ♊ and the ♃ is in ♉, counting from ♊ to ♉ gives 6 signs (♊, ♋, ♌, ♍, ♎, ♏). If the radix Asc is in ♈ and we count 6 signs we end up in ♊ (♈, ♉, ♊, ♋, ♌, ♍) with ♋ as the ruler of the day.

The other method Dorotheus describes involves counting the number of days since birth and resulting day ruler's connection to the Moon.

*[With regard to] the days, it is also necessary for you to convert all the years into days from the first day of the native's birth till the day which you wish; you make each year three hundred and sixty-five days and a fourth of a day, then subtract successive sevens, and give each a planet of the seven seven and begin from the planet which was in the ascendent, then to the first which follows [it].* 1.57

*First you subtract the number from forty-nine days so that what is left over is less than forty-nine days, then give seven to the lord of the sign of life [the ascendent], then seven to [the planet] which follows it until your number of days is used up.* 1.58

The instructions are cumbersome, as is the math; however, it looks as if he is giving each planet a day starting from the planet that rules the Ascendent and the remaining 6 days are given a ruling planet by taking the planets in order *as they appear in the chart* and that order just keeps repeating every seven days. So, if the Ascendant is in  $\Pi$ ,  $\text{♄}$  would rule the birthday. You then take the planets in zodiacal order according to how they fall relative to  $\text{♄}$  so, for example, in Queen Victoria's chart,  $\text{♄}$  is in  $\text{♈}$ , followed by the  $\odot$  and  $\text{♃}$  in  $\Pi$ ,  $\text{♌}$  in  $\text{♊}$ ,  $\text{♅}$  in  $\text{♋}$ ,  $\text{♂}$  and  $\text{♀}$  in  $\text{♍}$  making the day to day planetary order  $\text{♄}$ ,  $\odot$ ,  $\text{♃}$ ,  $\text{♌}$ ,  $\text{♅}$ ,  $\text{♂}$ ,  $\text{♀}$ .

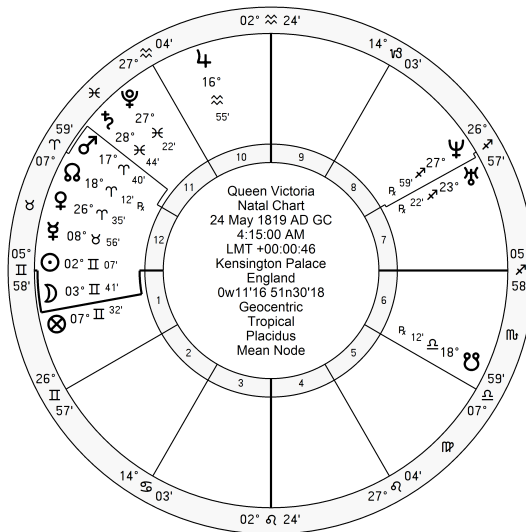


Figure 4.1: Chart 07: Queen Victoria

To know which planet ruled on June 20, 1837, the day she became Queen, we can take the day's Julian Day number  $(2392181)^1$  and subtract the Julian Day number of her birth  $(2385579)$  to get 6,602 days since her birth then  $6602 \bmod 7$  gives a remainder of 1 ( $6602/7 = 943$ .  $6602-943*7=1$ ) making the day ruler  $\text{♄}$ , which is the ruler of her Ascendant. [At least, I think that's what

Dorotheus' method boils down to.]

Once we've found the planet ruling the day we're investigating, he says to look for the sign the Moon is in and

*If the Moon is in that sign which the days reached and a malefic was in that sign in the nativity, then disease and evil will reach them [the natives]. Similarly if the place is bad [and] if a malefic aspects it at that time or this is the sign in which ♄ or ♂ was in the base-nativity and this sign is the house of [one of] the malefics but benefics aspect it in transit, then his case will be middling. If this is reverse, then reverse it.* 1.60-62

*Look at the Moon which, of the benefics and malefics aspects it. If the planet which aspects the Moon is a benefic at the beginning of fifteen degrees [within its sign], then this day will be hard for the native, but on that night he will find rest and recovery in the morning.* 1.60-64

He appears to be saying we should judge the day according to the position of the day ruler and the relation of the transit Moon to the birth chart Moon.

## 4.2 Illness

*Now I will make clear to you a section on chronic illness.* 1.65

---

<sup>1</sup>Julian Date calculator's are available on line; [NASA](#) provides a good one.

Look at the 6th sign from the Ascendant and determine if their nature is humane ( $\Pi$ ,  $\mathbb{M}$ ,  $\mathfrak{A}$ ,  $\mathfrak{B}$ , and the 1st half of  $\mathfrak{C}$ ), quadruped ( $\mathfrak{T}$ ,  $\mathfrak{U}$ ,  $\mathfrak{Q}$ ,  $\mathfrak{V}$ ), or wild ( $\mathfrak{Q}$ , last half of  $\mathfrak{C}$ ). And look at the sign's ruler, its nature and condition. 1.66

If the sign and its ruler are both in bad condition and they are both moist, *"then disasters will reach this native from pain due to moisture and cold and pain in his joints, and a long-lasting pain will seize him."* 1.67

If the sign is  $\mathfrak{T}$  or  $\mathbb{M}$  (ruled by  $\mathfrak{C}$ ), *"then a cutting with iron will reach him, and he will be burned in a fire, or dogs or lions will bite him, and some of them will be transfixed by a spear, and many disasters will reach him. These are the disasters if this planet is shining [and] luminous, but if this is covered up under the  $\odot$ 's light then pain or torment will reach him, and his belly will be split, and he will die from this."* 1.68-69

If  $\mathfrak{C}$  is in a sign ruled by  $\mathfrak{L}$ , the native will love wine and the disasters will be from his liver. 1.71-74

If  $\mathfrak{C}$  is in a sign ruled by  $\mathfrak{F}$ , the disasters will be from the love of women, *"their malady will seize him like the form of a madman, his reason and his [sense of] shame will depart in the search for women; it will be worse for this [native] if  $\mathfrak{F}$  is in a masculine sign."*

If  $\mathfrak{C}$  is in a sign ruled by  $\mathfrak{X}$ , *"then the reputation of this native will be spoiled and his words, and he will not be about to speak except in misery, and his hearing will decrease, and wretchedness in his throat will seize him."*

If  $\mathfrak{C}$  is in  $\mathfrak{Q}$  or  $\mathfrak{B}$ , or his own domicile, *"then a chronic illness in his eyes will reach him, and a pain in his heart will reach him from the  $\odot$ , and a pain in his spleen will reach him from the  $\mathfrak{D}$ ."*



## Lot of Chronic Illness

The lot is taken from  $\text{♄}$  to  $\text{♂}$  in diurnal charts,  $\text{♂}$  to  $\text{♄}$  in nocturnal charts, and projected from the Ascendant; the sign it falls in gives the body part that will be afflicted with chronic illness: 1.75-76

$\text{♄}$  the head

$\text{♅}$  the neck

$\text{♊}$  the two shoulders

$\text{♋}$  the two hands and the chest

$\text{♌}$  the two sides and the heart

$\text{♍}$  the belly and the spine

$\text{♎}$  the bladder which is between the two hips

$\text{♏}$  the penis, and the two testicles, and two buttocks

$\text{♐}$  the two thighs

$\text{♑}$  the two knees

$\text{♒}$  the two shanks

$\text{♓}$  the two feet

To determine whether the left or right side of the body is harmed, check the 10th sign from the Ascendant. If it contains none of the seven planets, the chronic illness will be on the left side of the body, otherwise, the illness will affect the right side. 1.79-80

Dorotheus says some ancients used the  $\text{♄}$  to describe the body, saying, if the malefics were square or opposed to the  $\text{♄}$  and “*they were looking at life from the ascendent and ♀ and ☿ (and the malefics aspect them) and the nature of the place in which they are, if this sign is one of the quadruped signs or one of the human signs or one of the watery signs—and they were looking at this sign to which of the limbs of the body belongs, so that they* 1.77-78

might say that the chronic illness is in this limb of the body of men.”<sup>1</sup>

### Indications from the 4th House

Check the triplicity lords of the 4th house; the 1st triplicity lord gives indications for the native’s death; the 2nd triplicity lord gives indications for chronic illness, combine its indications with those given by the Lot of Chronic Illness.

1.81-4

### Configurations indicating chronic illness

In lines 1.85 to 1.87 Dorotheus describes configurations involving the lot of chronic illness, the lights and either ♂ or ♄ or both:

- the ☽ and the lot of chronic illness in the 11th while ♂ is in the 2nd<sup>2</sup> indicates “*the body of this native will be broken and his joints will waste away, all of them* but if ♄ is in the 2nd the “*native will fall from a high, elevated place*” and if the sign [on the 2nd?] is a water sign “*then these disasters will be from water, or some of the animals of the sea will devour him.*”
- If ♂ and ♄ rise after the ☉ and ☽ or are in the same sign as the lights, conjunct or in greater degrees, ...,<sup>3</sup> “*it will be worse for this [native] if it is ♂ because nothing will cover up the evil of ♂ except God alone, the truth of the world.*”

---

<sup>1</sup>I think he means the sign the malefic is in determines the body part unless the malefic is aspecting the ☽ from the Asc and ♀ and ☿ are also aspecting the ☽ and the malefic then the sign ♀ or ☿ are in determines which limb is harmed. Although the whole section is pretty garbled.

<sup>2</sup>Dykes translation has “in the eighth”; however, the 2nd makes sense here as it is the 10th from the 11th, Zoller taught the 10th place from any house gave indications for the *outcome* of the house

<sup>3</sup>The text here is missing

- if the dodecatemorian of the ☉ or ☌ are in the aspect of a malefic “*then a chronic illness in his body will reach this native*” 1.106-7

### Conditions harmful to one’s eyesight

In lines 1.88 to 1.97 Dorotheus describes conditions that can indicate harm to the native’s eyesight:

- If ☿ is in the 2nd sign from the ☉ or ☌ “*then disasters will reach the native in his eye or his vision will depart*”; the harm will be worse if the ☉ or ☌ are in the “*sign of life*” (rising sign) and the malefics set after the ☉ and ☌
- The eyesight is also damaged if the ☌ is in the West [7th?] and the malefics are angular, especially if the ☌ is full. If the ☉ is there instead of the ☌ the same, unless ♄ aspects the ☉, as then the native will still be able to see a little;
- If the ☉ and ☌ are in the 7th and ♄ and ☿ rise after them then there will be a chronic illness of the eyes (rather than a disastrous loss of vision) and the same if ☿ and the ☉ are in the 7th in the aspect of ♄
- If ☿ and the ☉ or ☌ are in the house of life (rising sign), “*a chronic illness in his eyes will reach him*” and the same if the ☉ rises with or after the ☌ and ☿ is between them
- If the ☌ and ♄ are in ♊, or the ☌ alone is in ♊ with ♄ in square or opposition to it<sup>1</sup>, “*a chronic illness will reach the eyes*”

---

<sup>1</sup>The text has “aspecting it from the fourth or from the seventh” which implies that ♊ must be the rising sign, in which case the previous condition would apply and singling out ♊ would be unnecessary so I’ve assumed “from the 4th” means in ‘square’ and “from the 7th” means in ‘opposition’.

- If the ☽ gives indications for chronic illness or if she aspects the malefics from the 4th place, then *“this native will not escape from chronic illness, neither because of the remedy of physicians nor by asking God for health, so that he will die from his chronic illness.”*

### Degrees Injurious to the Eyes

If the ☽ is in one of the following degrees and is ☿, ☐, or ♁ the malefics while she is waning, *“the native [will have] darkness in his eye.”* If the ☽ is waxing, *“then a chronic illness in his eye will reach this native, but his eye will not be blinded.”* 1.108-111

- 6-9 ♃, the Pleiades
- 9 ♄
- 18 ♌, the mane of the lion
- 8 ♏, the face of the scorpion
- 9 ♏, the eyes of the scorpion
- 10 ♏<sup>1</sup>
- 23 ♏, the scorpion’s stinger
- 3 ♎, the point of the arrow

### Timing

The above indications are based on the radix positions and *“not on the transfer”* (protected positions). If the year comes to the sign<sup>2</sup> which holds the ☽ blockaded between the two malefics, *“the native will dread this, but discomfort will not get hold of him by the decree of God, and he will escape from the aggregate of ailments and* 1.99-102

<sup>1</sup>Dykes has “the forehead of the Scorpion and its eyes, in 8°, 9°, and 10° of Scorpio”

<sup>2</sup>I’m interpreting these lines (IV.1.99-102) as if they apply to protected, not radix, positions.

*misfortunes*” but if the transfer comes to the sign of the ☉ or ☌ and they are in the square or opposition of ♄ or ♀, then “*a chronic illness in his eyes will reach him*”<sup>1</sup>

### Side of body affected

If the indications are from the ☉ in a diurnal chart then 1.103-7  
the person’s right side, right eye and his right hand will be affected. If the indications are from the ☌ in a night chart, then the person’s left side, left eye, and their left hand, will be affected.

### Various configurations indicating madness

♂ if ♂ is in the 1st in opposition to the ☌ in the 7th, 1.112-114  
“*then the native will have little life and madness will seize him*”, and it will be worse if the ☌ is waning

If the ☌ is in ♋ or another sign with cut-off limbs<sup>2</sup> and ♂ is in the 1st or 5th in the aspect<sup>3</sup> of the ☌ “*then one of the limbs of this native will be cut off by iron so that that limb will be wretched because of it*”

♄ if ♄ is in the 7th and the ☌ and ♂ are in the 1st, 1.115  
“*then madness will seize this native and he will have no reason, and he will not be aware of what he is doing*” and if the benefics rise after the ☌ and ♂ they will be spoiled and injured<sup>4</sup>

---

<sup>1</sup>In other words, if a light is in the protected 1st and a malefic is in a protected angle (which happens if they are square or opposed to the light) then what is indicated in the radix (harm to the eyesight) happens in that year.

<sup>2</sup>These possibly include ♊ and ♏ both of which are described by Valens as being “half-finished”

<sup>3</sup>It is not clear from the text if the aspect must be partile, within 3° or simply by sign

<sup>4</sup>Unable to prevent the harm?

- If the ♃ and ♀ are in the 1st and ♂ is aspecting from the 7th, *“then this native will not have reason”* 1.121
- ♄ if ♄ is in the 1st or 10th and the ♃ is in the 7th, then the native will *“have no reason, and he will not be aware of what he is doing”* and it will be worse if ♂ is with the ♃; and if the benefics rise after ♄ or the ♃ (?) they will be spoiled and injured 1.116
- ☉ if the ☉ and ♃ are in the same sign with ♂ between them while ♄ is rising after them and in aspect, *“then this native will not have reason”*, especially if the ☉ and ♃ are in the 8th but if the benefics are aspecting or rising after them *“then he will escape from his misfortune”* 1.118

### Various configurations indicating illnesses

- If the ♃ is USB or waning and separating from an angular malefic, *“then this native will have no strength and no power, and he will be emaciated [and] sick”* and it will be worse if the other malefic is also in aspect with the ♃. 1.122
- If the ♃ is separating from ♄, *“then a pain i the belly will seize him, and his belly will defecate, and a pain of coldness will seize him, and his pain will last a long time, and a pin in the spleen will seize some of them, and he will ask for a drink, and his belly will be split open, and a cough will seize him”* 1.123
- If the ♃ is separating from ♂, *“then a pain of the blood will seize him in [his] belly but the medicine of doctors will help him”* 1.124
- If the native is a girl, *“then all of these diseases will seize her and together with all these diseases other diseases will reach her because her belly will sell up and her* 1.125

*child will not live, but her child will be cut off in her belly but she will keep the black bile”.*

If the **♃** is separating from benefics and will conjoin 1.126  
with benefics before leaving the sign she is in, *“then the native will be healthy for half his life, then after this he will swell up and diseases will seize him from which he will not escape.”*

If **♄** and **♂** are in the 2nd and are aspecting the **♃** 1.27  
while **♅** is not aspecting the **♃**, *“then every misery will reach this native in his body.”*

If **♄** is aspecting **♆**, *“the he will be dumb, one who has 1.28  
lost [his] reason, and he will not be able to speak, or he will be stammering, not speaking except with difficulty.”*

If **♄** and **♀** are in the 10th and the **♃** is in the 10th 1.29-30  
and **♂** aspects them, *“then this native will not be able to have intercourse with women and will be a vicious man. If the native is a girl, then she will not marry and have no children.”*

If **♂** and **♄** are aspecting **♀** and the **♃**, *“then the 1.31-2  
male [organ] of this native and his testicles will be cut off with iron. If this native is a girl, then she will be barren [and] will not give birth; it will be worse for this [native] if the two [malefics] are in the sixth and twelfth sign from the [sign of] of life.”*

If **♅** is aspecting **♂** and **♄**, *“then he will be the one 1.33  
who does the work of God in worship, a prayer-leader in a mosque or the like, and his livelihood will be from this.”*

If **♅** is in the place of **♀** or **♆** is in [one of] the houses of 1.34  
these two or **♆** is with **♅** *“(it is worse for this [native] if the two are in a sign possessing two bodies and the malefics are aspecting them), then this native will be effeminate, and this, that the native will be named **♆** or with the name of the **♃**.”*

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in  $30^\circ$  “*of the sign in which it is*”<sup>1</sup> and  $\mathfrak{h}$  1.35  
is aspecting her from the 4th, “*then this native will be a  
midget, the shortest of all men.*”

If  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{o}$  are in the same sign and the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is between 1.36  
them, “*then this native will be a leper, and scabies and  
itching will seize him.*”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in  $\mathfrak{T}$  or in  $\mathfrak{O}$  and  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{o}$ , are with it, 1.37  
“*then leprosy and erysipelas*<sup>2</sup> *will seize him, and his body  
will swell up.*”

### Timing

The time of life during which the illness can be expected is 1.138-42  
given by the hemispheric position of the planet signifying  
the illness:

East the chronic illness will be at the beginning of the  
person’s life, which is the worst timing

West it is more ideal and it will be good if he is treated  
in his youth

South the chronic illness will be in the middle of the per-  
son’s life

North the chronic illness will be in his old age

### 4.3 Death

Now I will make clear to you the matter of 1.143  
death.

<sup>1</sup>Think this means *if* the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the last degree of her sign.

<sup>2</sup>According to [WebMD](#), *erysipelas* is a bacterial infection of the  
skin which causes red rashes, blisters, and sores.



## The 8th

Identify the sign and its nature: watery, dry, human, 1.144-45  
quadruped, or wild. Then identify ruler of the sign and  
the planets aspecting the sign.

If ♄ rules the 8th and he is in the West<sup>1</sup>, then *“this native will die in other than his own land”* and if ♄ is in 1.146-9  
a moist sign the person *“will die in the water or the belly of a sea monster or a fish,”* or if ♄ is an earth sign, *“then the native will die at the peak of a mountain”* or if the ☉ is with ♄, *“then this native will fall from a high place and will die.”*

If ♀ rules the 8th, *“then thieves will fall upon this native and kill [him] or [his] enemies will kill him in a fight or he will burn in a fire or an animal from among the earthy animals will bite him or lions will devour him.”* 1.150-153  
If the ☉ is with ♀, *“then this will reach him from the anger of kings or the anger of a great man so that he will be killed or crucified on a post, or his middle will be cut with a sword, or a lion and a tiger will slay him, or animals or hogs will vie [with him]”* and if ♀ is not in one of its own places, *“then he will die in exile from his land”* but if ♀ is in one of its own places, *“then this native will die because of women or by means of poison and drinking a drug.”*

If ☿ is the lord of the 8th, *“then he will die from the anger of kings.”* 1.154

If the ruler of the 8th is not in one of his own places 1.155-7  
and is impeded by a malefic who is in the 8th, *“then this native will die on a journey”* but if the lord of the 8th is

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes has this “as in an alien place” saying that “western” does not make sense in this context. By an “alien place” I’m assuming he means the planet has no dignities in the sign it is in. Although, I think “in the West” here might be equivalent to being in the 7th which indicates “foreign lands”, so someone dying in a foreign country.

in one of his own places, “*then this native will die in his own land and in his place and among his people.*” But if the lord of the 8th is benefic and impeded, “*then the death of this native will also be thus, but his death will be better for him.*”

### Lot of Death

“*Some of them learned in the stars*” counted from the ☿ 1.158 to the 8th and “*then cast out from ♄,*” and judged the native’s death from the sign the lot fell in and ruler of that sign.

### Planet first to the Descendant

“*Some of them looked at that planet which reached to the degree of the seventh, and not in the casting [of rays], but they saw which of the two would be more quickly cadent in the West so that from that one they might judge death for him, if God wills.*” 1.159

Believe he means we should look at the first planet that will move, by primary motion, across the Descendant (cusp of the 7th) into the 6th (a cadent place) and judge the manner of death by that planet’s condition in the radix.

### A Difficult Death

*If ☿ is in the tenth but not in the cardines while the ☿ is in a cardine, the seventh, and the malefics aspect the ☿, then enemies and thieves will kill this native.* 1.165

Believe he is saying that if the ☿ is angular in the 7th house and ☿ is in the 10th sign but not the 10th house

i.e. cadent in the 9th house, then the native will be killed by enemies and thieves; possibly as such a planet would square the ♃. For example, if the Asc is in 10 ♉ and the MC in 15 ♊ then ♀ at 12 ♊ would be in the 9th house and in square to a ♃ in the 7th at 12 ♎.

*If the malefics are rising after the seventh sign or are aspecting it from the seventh (it will be worse for this [native] if the malefics are in cardines), then this native will die a difficult death.*

1.166

This possibly means that if the ♃ is in the 7th and a malefic is in the 10th, 9th, or 8th (rising after the 7th) or in the 1st (7th from the 7th and so in opposition to the ♃) then the native will have “a difficult death” and the worst would be if the malefic was in the 1st or 10th. I’m assuming primary motion is meant here based on his use of “rising after” which can only happen by primary motion.

### Triplicity Rulers of the 4th

Look at the triplicity lords of the 4th, the first indicates death and the second, chronic illness. If both are together in a bad place, judge the native will have a difficult death. If the first triplicity lord is in the 4th or in the 7th, “*then this native will die and not one of men will appear to see him, and they will not know how he died, and they said that this man will be named as a messenger.*”

1.167-70

If the 2nd triplicity lord is in the 7th, “*then this native will be chronically ill [and] miserable; if it is aspecting the house of life, it will be worse for him.*”

171

### Indications from the 7th

If the ruler of the 7th is a malefic and it is USB, “*then this native will die from [his] slaves or from a matter which no one knows. If this planet is seen in the East, then this native will die publicly, but if it is retrograde, then this native will die from a drug in which [there is] no good, and his suffering will be prolonged.*” 172-3

If the 7th sign is a human sign, “*then he will die because of men, and if it is one of the watery signs, then he will die because of water, and if it is one of the quadruped signs, then he will die because of quadrupeds or lions will eat him.*” 1.174

If the malefics are with the ☿ or the other malefics are aspecting the ☿ from the 7th, then he will die from surgery. 1.175

If the ☿ is in a new sign when it shines from the ☼ and...is aspecting the ☼ from the 4th or the 7th but not aspecting the ☿, then this native will kill himself. 1.176

If the ☼ is eclipsed in the 7th or the ☿ is passing from a degree which aspects the degree the ☼ is in<sup>1</sup>, “*then this native will die in fire or in water, and many people will die with him.*” 1.177

If the ruler of the 7th is in a place in which [there is] no good or it is in the 10th while the malefics are with the ☿, “*then this native will fall from a high place and will die from it.*” 1.178

If the lord of the lot of the 7th<sup>2</sup> is with the lot of luck<sup>3</sup> and the malefics are determinative, then he will die because of his friends. 1.179

---

<sup>1</sup>☿ is separating from the eclipse degree?

<sup>2</sup>Dykes thinks this is the Lot of Eros which is taken from Fortune to Spirit and projected from the Asc in a diurnal chart, from Spirit to Fortune in a nocturnal chart. (p220n112)

<sup>3</sup>Dykes thinks this is the Lot of Fortune (p220n113)

If ♀ is in the 7th house and the ☿ is peregrine and 1.180  
with the malefics, *“then the death of this native will be  
because of a woman who has had many husbands, [but]  
then they died.”*

If ♄ is like ♀, *“then he will die because of [his] children 1.181  
or from his good name and good reputation which they  
will be envious of.”*

If ♂ is like ♀, *“then [he will die] because of his broth- 1.182  
ers.”*

If the ☼ is like ♀, *“then he will die because of his 1.182  
mother and his ancestors.”*

If the ☿ is like ♀, *“then he will die because of his 1.183  
mother and his father’s wife.”*

#### 4.4 The Transfer of Planets

*Now I will also make clear to you the transfer 1.185  
of some of the seven to the places of the others.*

**NOTE:** as a rule Dorotheus’ instructions in this section of his work are read in reference to a *Solar Return* chart drawn for the date and time the ☼ returns to its natal position for the year in question. I am reading them with reference to the *profected* chart which I take to be the original *turned* chart.

As the radix chart is turned by 30° each year to bring a new sign to the Ascendant the planets are seen to occupy different houses and so come into new relationships with the radix planets and lots.

Dorotheus tells us that when a planet reaches the 7th house from its radix position “*then it is difficult in its maleficence*” and the same is true when it returns to its own radix house. 1.186-7

As I understand it, he is saying that if, for example, radix Venus is in the 6th and by profec-tion she appears in the 12th, in opposition to her radix position, then any harm she signifies will be evident in that year and again when she appears back in the 6th, her original place.

In a diurnal chart, ☿ reaching the place of the ☉ or ♄ “*is worse for this native*” and if a malefic is with the ☉ or ♄ there will be disasters and quarrels with the father. In a nocturnal chart, ♄ reaching the place of the ☉ is worse and if a malefic is with the ☉, there is greater harm to his body. 1.188-9

If profected ♄ or ☿ is trine<sup>1</sup> the place in the radix, then it will be better for the native than if it is in the 4th (square) or 7th (opposite) place. 1.190

If the malefics are in a right square (i.e. in the 10th from a place), “*then there will be no good in it*”, but if the benefics are in a right square, “*then it will be good*”. And if the benefics are trine<sup>2</sup>, “*then this native will attain good*”. 1.191-2

*If the malefics are in their triplicities, then it will harm this native because the lord of the triplicity [being] ☿ by day and ♄ by night is* 1.193

---

<sup>1</sup>Pingree has this as “in triplicity” but that doesn’t fit well with the rest of the thought and “triplicity” is sometimes confused with “trine” in translations (see Dykes p220, although he is referring to Solar Return placements).

<sup>2</sup>Again, replacing ‘triplicities’ with ‘trine’.

*the worst of what might be; it is worse for this [native] if the two in the base-nativity were in a place in which [there is] no good.”*

The only sense I can make out of the above is that, if the malefics are in difficult houses (2nd, 6th, 8th, 12th) the harm will be worse for the person. The reference to ‘triplicities’ makes little sense as ♂ does not rule any triplicity by day and ♀ does not rule any triplicity by night. ♂ is the nocturnal triplicity ruler for ♉, ♊, and ♋, while ♀ is the diurnal triplicity ruler for ♈, ♉, and ♊ unless he means that if they are in their own triplicities but contrary to the chart sect i.e. ♂ in a water sign in a day chart, ♀ in an air sign in a night chart; then they will cause more harm since they are stronger *in* their own triplicities than out of them.

If the person is older than 30 the harm from ♀ will be less. 1.94

If ♀ and ♂ are rising after the cardines<sup>1</sup>, then also quarrels and misery will reach the native. If the malefics are in the cardines, “then [there will be] no good in it.” 1.195, 233

If ♀ and ♂, in the radix, are in “places in which [there is] no good” and in the profection the benefics are also brought to places where “there is no good”, “then it will diminish from that good which belonged to the native in that year.” 1.196

If ♀ is with the ♄, “then cold will seize this native in this year” 1.203

---

<sup>1</sup>Will cross the angles by primary direction?

If ♄ reaches its own place, *“then good will reach this native”*<sup>1</sup> 1.204

If ♄ reaches ♀ place, *“then it will spoil the native’s heart and it will spoil him, and he himself will be wicked.”* 1.212

If the ☉ and the ☿ are in the malefics’ places, *“then [there will be] no good in it.”* 1.232

If the ☿ reaches: 1.197-208

- its own place, the native will be cheerful and rejoice, especially if ♀ and ♃ are also there
- the ☉’s place, *“there will be good in what belongs to the native after his day”*<sup>2</sup>
- ♀’s place, *“disasters will immediately reach this native”* unless the benefics aspect the ☿
- the ☉’s or ♀ place while the ☉ or ♀ are also where they were in the radix, *“then the blood will be expelled from this native’s body”*
- ♀’s place and the malefics are not<sup>3</sup> with the ☿, *“then in that year this native’s property will be wasted in fornication, and he will disgrace himself, and he will be greedy, [and] people will know about him.”*
- ☿’s place, *“then this native will do some work in accordance with the nature of ☿”*
- the 1st place, then native’s life will be spoiled

---

<sup>1</sup>In 1.187 we were told a planet reaching its own place is malefic; here we’re told a malefic reaching its own place will produce good. Possibly, rather than ‘place’ i.e. house, it should read the place of his domicile? i.e. ♄ in the 2nd returning to the 2nd is malefic but ♄ in the 2nd reaching the place where ♃ or ♀ are found, his effects are good?

<sup>2</sup>Meaning “after his birthday”, for the year?

<sup>3</sup>The ‘not’ seems weird here, you’d expect what follows if ♀ was corrupted by a malefic.



- the 10th place, then the native's work in will public will be in accord with the nature of aspecting benefics or malefics
- the 7th place, the native will triumph over his enemies, prosper, and obtain his income
- the 4th place, the year will concern a secret matter that he will conceal and keep quiet about but if he makes a will, it will be good

If ♄ and ♀ reach:

1.210-211

- ♄'s place, *"then these two spoil the goodness of ♄"*.
- the place of ♀ and ☿, *"then these two diminish from their good."*

If ☿ reaches:

1.213-216

- ♄'s place, *"then it will ameliorate the soul of the native and make it firm and render [him] victorious over his enemies."*
- ♀' or ♄'s place, *"then it will take away all the natives good in that year."*
- ☿ is USB, *"then fever and a hot temperature and a hot pain will seize this native in this year, and it will destroy his reason; if the father of the native is alive, then grief will reach this native because of his father and his state with regard to work and the authority of kings will be spoiled."*
- ☿'s place, *"then this native will worry and will persuade himself of what has no good in it, and he will treat his friends as enemies, and his opinion of them will be low, and their slaves will scorn some of them, and disaster will reach him in his property"*
- the ♃'s place, *"then a pain will reach this native in his body, then afterwards he will use his intellect and be victorious over his enemies [with] trouble and difficulty."*

1.229

If ♃ reaches:

1.217- 219

- ♃'s place, *"then it will remove the corruption of ♃ in that year, and he will attain property and good."*
- ♂ place, *"then good will increase with regard to the native's properties and he will be victorious over his enemies in that year"*
- the square of ♂ or ♃<sup>1</sup>, *"then it is likewise good."*

If ♀ reaches:

1.220-224

- ♃'s place, *"then [he will have] no good in the case of women, [and] grief and quarrels will reach the native in this year."*
- ♂ place, *"then the native will leave him in anger and will not look at anyone"*
- ♀'s place, *"then it will increase the native's work"*
- ♃'s place, *"then he will be good in [his] work, but a bad reputation in the matter of women will be spread"*
- ☉'s place, *"then it will spoil the life of that native and disasters will reach him because of women"*
- the square of ♂ or ♃, then it is good<sup>2</sup>

If ♀ reaches:

1.225-231

- the places of benefics, then it will be good; the places of the malefics, *"then [there will be] no good in it."*; and, if neither the benefics nor the malefics aspect ♀ *"then this native will not be good in his work, but he will remove grief and hardship from himself"*

---

<sup>1</sup>This is missing from Pingree's version; added from Dykes (p226) who takes it from Schmidt's translation (p226n160).

<sup>2</sup>*ibid.*

- ♄'s place, "then he will be good in all work; it will be better for this [native] if this native desires entry to [the palaces of] kings."
- ♂'s place, "then this native's heart will be strong in every falsehood."
- ♀'s place, "then his work will be good and he will attain good."
- the ♃'s place, "then the body of this native will be cured and the pain in his joints will depart."

#### 4.5 The Cardines (Angles)

*Now I will make clear to you the matter of the cardines. Look concerning these four cardines:*

1.234-235

- 1st for the appraisal of the native
- 10th for the matter of children<sup>1</sup> and of work
- 7th for the matter of women and marriage
- 4th for old age and the end of life

*"And the matter of the body and of property is known from the prorogation<sup>2</sup> of the degrees and [their] varieties."*

The ascendent gives the matter of youth, it is the place where the ☉ rises from the water, and the darkness in their eyes is raised up for the people of the world, and sheds light on the eyes of the messengers who sent them forth to creation.

1.236

After youth, the 10th and its gift [lasts] until the body of this native becomes warm and hair grows on his pubic area and he loves sexual intercourse.

1.237

---

<sup>1</sup>Children are usually signified by the 5th

<sup>2</sup>The term used in the text for directing the angles, planets, or lots according to their right/oblique ascensions (primary directions) See [Book III Longevity Example](#).

From the 7th will be the gift of old age, and it will 1.238  
diminish the strength of this native for sexual intercourse  
[so that] the native will be insignificant in this, and the  
☉ sets and darkens [their] eyes.

From the 4th is known the gift of death. 1.239

If the planets are luminous in these four angles, then 1.240  
this native will attain good; if they are darkened, then  
[there will be] no good in it.

The 4th book of Dorotheus on the revolution of the  
years of the nativity is completed by the praise and grace  
of God.

The 5th book, about interrogations, follows it.

*In the name of God, the compassionate, the merciful; where is my success save in almighty God?*<sup>2</sup>

## 5.1 Introduction

*This is the book of Dorotheus, King of Egypt. There are five books; he wrote four of them on nativities in which he mentioned every good and evil, and misery or happiness that men may attain from the beginning of their situation till its end, and he wrote one of them about the matter of commencements, and it is this book which is called the fifth book, in which he mentioned the condition of every action which is begun, whether its limit is determined or it is not determined where the beginning of this action or its middle or its end will end up and what of good or evil will happen in it.*

1.1-2

*He says in his book that he is following the tracks of the learned men who practised from among the learned of Babylon and Egypt since they were the first who looked concerning the science of the stars and their calculation and the revolution of the sphere and the motions of the seven stars and the rising-times of the twelve signs so that he might extract this from their books, then give this to himself as an example in his following [them].*

1.3

---

<sup>2</sup>Book V appears to focus on Elections (choosing the right time to begin an action) although it is also frequently used as a reference for Horary questions.

*He says that, wherever he looked concerning what they dealt with and arranged of the science of the stars, he followed the best of their science and acquired it and explained it and collected it and extracted it from their books as he made it an example for himself in his following their tracks, and he made it this book like a bee when it follows the most delicious of fruits, and the best of it is made into honey; then he began to write for this book a comprehensive introduction in which he mentions the power of the seven and the twelve, and their soundness and their corruption.* 1.4

*He said: look concerning the commencing of each matter you desire at the straight in rising from among the signs and the crooked, and the tropical and the twin from among them, and at the position of the star which is in the ascendent in the commencement of each action, [to see whether] its end will be good or bad.* 1.5

*It is necessary if you commence [something] to know what is the nature of the signs straight in rising and crooked. I shall make clear to you [those] of them that are straight and crooked. The straight among them are ☊, ☋, ☌, ☍, ☎, and ☏ because each one of these six rises in two hours and a part of an hour of the equinotical hours, which are the hours [of the nychthemeron<sup>1</sup>] in which the night and the day are equal; the length of each of these hours is fifteen [equatorial] degrees.* 1.6-8

---

<sup>1</sup>A full 24 hour period lasting a night (Greek *nyx*) and day (Greek *hēmera*)

*The crooked among them are  $\mathfrak{V}$ ,  $\mathfrak{W}$ ,  $\mathfrak{X}$ ,  $\mathfrak{Y}$ ,  $\mathfrak{Z}$ , and  $\mathfrak{I}$ , because each one of these six rises in less than two hours of the equinoctial hours.*

1.9

## 5.2 Judgment according to the crooked and the straight

See if the sign rising at “*each commencement*” is straight or crooked.

If the rising sign is straight and it holds a malefic or a malefic aspects it, then the going will be slow and there will be “misery and misfortune” along with “trouble and pain”.

If the rising sign is crooked and it holds a benefic or a benefic is in aspect to it; they will help bring the action to a successful conclusion.

If the rising sign contains, or is aspected by, both benefics and malefics, there will be mixed results, both good and bad.

*Straight* signs are of “long” ascension as they take two hours or more to rise and they are seen to rise ‘straight up’; near to a right-angle from the horizon. *Crooked* signs rise at an oblique angle to the horizon, taking less than two hours to rise and so are of “short” ascension.

*Straight* signs indicate slow actions but “direct” paths; it’s clear to see where the action is leading; while *crooked* signs indicate “quick” actions but along an “unclear” or “indirect” path; it’s not always clear what the action is leading.

### 5.3 Judgment according to the tropical signs

If the Ascendent is in a tropical (♊, ♋) sign, *“then it indicates the breaking off of the end of this action before it is finished, and it indicates that he will commence this action a second time.”*

### 5.4 Judgment according to the twin signs

If the Ascendent is in a twin (probably ♊, ♎, ♊, ♎) sign, *“then it indicates that that action which he commences at that hour will not be finished until an action other than this occurs in it, and it [the second action] will be finished before the first action is finished; it happens thus in every action in which the ascendent is a twin sign.”*

#### The diurnal and nocturnal signs

The diurnal signs are those in the Fire (♌, ♍, ♊) and Air (♊, ♎, ♎) signs.

The nocturnal signs are those in the Earth (♋, ♌, ♎) and Water (♊, ♎, ♋) signs.

If someone wants to begin an action during the day, then it is best to have the Ascendent and ♎ in a diurnal sign. If they want to start something during the night, it is best to have them in a nocturnal sign, especially if one is going to start a journey or board a ship as it will make the trip *“easy, fortunate, convenient, if God—be He exalted!—wishes.”*

### 5.5 The corruption of the Moon

“Then he mentioned the condition of the ♎ and its corruption in which a commencement is not to be made in an action or anything when you find this until the of the ♎ and its lord is ameliorated.” 1



“I will make clear to you its corruption if it is eclipsed, 2  
and worse than this if its eclipse is in the sign in which  
the ☿ was at the birth of this native or its eclipse is in  
trine of the sign in which the ☿ was when this native was  
born.”

“If the ☿ is under the ☼’s rays [and] its light is de- 3  
stroyed and it is not seen, then it is corrupted but it is  
beneficial for one who desires theft or treachery or some-  
thing which is kept secret against him, and for every hid-  
den or secret action which its master does not wish to be  
made public.”

“If it is an action which its master wishes to keep 4  
secret, commence it when the ☿ is immersed under the  
☼’s rays as there is good for him, and it will be more  
concealed if he commences it at the withdrawal of the ☿  
for the ☼ and [its] appearance from under the rays.”

“If the ☿ is in the dodecatmoria of ♂ or ♀ and if 5  
the ☿ is in the middle of the equator descending towards  
the South and if the ☿ is in opposition to the ☼, then it  
is bad and it indicates the accession of quarrels and that  
the younger of the two will be the winning antagonist.”

“If the ☿ is with a malefic or aspecting it and if there 6-7  
is withdrawal of the ☿ from the ☼, in longitude and lat-  
itude and if the ☿ is in its least motion, that is if it is  
decreasing in its counting and its motion in a day and a  
night is less than twelve degrees, then this motion of it  
is like the motion of ♄. If it is thus, then in the action  
which he commences at that hour will occur difficulty and  
slowness.”

“If the ☿ in its motion is in the path which the learned 8  
call “the burned path” (the burned path is the middle of  
the equator, which is ♊ and ♋) and if the ☿ is in the  
last degrees of a sign, then it is according to this in the  
term of ♄ or ♂, and none of the terms which are at the  
end of the signs are harder than the terms of these two.”

“If the ☾ is cadent toward the ninth from the car- 9  
dine [which is] the house of government [the tenth] and  
it happens to be in a double place, then the action which  
he commences at that hour will be nullified and will not  
remain in one condition, and a transformation and dis-  
turbance will occur in it.”

“Understand when you think about what I wrote for 10  
you of the corruption of the ☾ and do not commence any-  
thing in it as the matter will stop for which it is not fated  
that it linger on till the condition of the ☾ is ameliorated.”

“Let ♃ or ♀ be in the ascendent or in the house of 11-12  
government [the tenth]. Look concerning the condition of  
[these] stars and their positions as, if they happen to be  
under the [☉’s] rays or are retrograde in their motion or  
happen to be in a bad place that is double, which is when  
it is cadent from a cardine, then they will not have much  
power.”

Dykes translation of lines 9, 10, 11 and 12 above  
is somewhat different; he has:

*“And if the Moon was falling from the stake  
of the house of authority towards the ninth, and  
she occurs in a **double place**, for the work  
which he begins in that hour will be nullified and  
will not remain in one condition, and alteration  
and unrest will enter into it.”*

*“So understand when you consider what I  
have put down for you of the corruption of the  
Moon, and do not start anything in it; but if a  
matter comes which your are not able to put off  
until the condition of the Moon is suitable, then  
let Jupiter and Venus be in the Ascendant or in  
the house of authority [10th]”*

*“And look into the condition of the stars and*

*their positions, for if they fell under the rays or were retrograde in their motion, or they fell into a bad place that is double (and it is where is falling from a stake [angle]), then they will not have much power.”*(p.235) [emphasis added]

Neither Pingree nor Dykes attempt to address the meaning of a “double place.” The first few times I read this section I thought that the author, by the term “double place,” was referring to a planet being in a mutable (bi-corporeal so double) sign; however, on closer reading I believe he is referring to an angular sign (a cardine) that falls on both an angular and cadent house; a “double place”. For example a rising (1st) sign with the Asc at 10° would fall on the 1st house and the 12th house as measured when the distance from the MC to the Asc is divided into thirds. Dorotheus appears to be saying that if the planet falls in the cadent section of the sign its effects are “nullified” and it “will not have much power.”

This is very similar to the way Valens handles “destructive and non-destructive rays” which he describes with reference to operative and non-operative places in Book 3.3. Valens say a planet “which projects rays from an angle into inoperative degrees which precede an angle does not become destructive” (or beneficial). He defines “inoperative” areas as the areas cadent from the angles calculated from the MC/IC and Asc/Dsc axes.

The key difference is that Valens says the aspect will not be destructive if it falls, for example, in the 12th. He does not say the *planet* itself

is not destructive because it is in the cadent section of the sign. Dorotheus appears to be saying the planet itself will be weak and powerless, not just its rays.

“If any of the malefics is with them in one degree, or they aspect it from trine or quartile or sextile or are with it in one sign, then it indicates that this action will have no strength.” 13

“If the planets are in signs which the learned call “the dark”<sup>1</sup>, then they will have no power, nor will their rays if they are thus.”<sup>2</sup> 14

“Look concerning the totality of every commencement in the manner of Valens the Philosopher<sup>3</sup>; then take into consideration his words as he was making a brilliant [and] learned investigation concerning [these] matters.” 15

“He said: Look concerning the commencement of each action at the ☉ and ☿ and the lord[s] of the two signs in which the two luminaries are, and together with this look at the ascendent and midheaven. Commence the commencement and action when the ☿ is in the ascendent or midheaven or another of the cardines; and [if] the lord of the ☿’s sign happens to be in a double place or cadent<sup>4</sup>, withdrawing from a cardine, then the beginning of this action will be good but its end bad [and] from this calamity will befall him and whatever he doesn’t desire.” 16-17

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes references Sahl in saying “the dark” signs are ♊ and ♋ (p.335n23)

<sup>2</sup>So possibly Dorotheus is saying both the planets and their rays will have no power if they are in cadent as well as dark places.

<sup>3</sup>Dykes believes the author meant “Dorotheus” here, not Valens (p.235n25).

<sup>4</sup>Here I think he means the planet can be in an angular sign that has a cadent section or in a cadent (i.e. 9th, 12th, 3rd, 6th) sign.

“The **Д** is the indicator of the base of every action and the lord of the sign in which the **Д** is is the indicator of its end. If you find the lord of the **Д** in a good place while the **Д** is in a bad place, then the commencement of the action is bad but its end is good [and] he will benefit by it, if God—be He exalted!—wishes.” 18-19

“If you find the lord of the **Д** in a strong place and the **Д** in a double place, then it indicates that the beginning of his action will be difficult [and] slow, with no good in it, but [its] end will be good [and] it will come to him as he wishes.” 20

“If the **Д** and its lord happen to be in a strong place, then it indicates that the beginning of that action and its end will happen according to what he desires.” 21

“If the **Д** and its lord happen to be in a double place, then the beginning of this action will be bad and its end worse than the beginning.” 22

“If the lord of the **Д** happens to be in [one of] the signs which follow the cadents<sup>1</sup>, which are difficult, then it indicates that that action which he commences will have a delay in its beginning and slowness in its end.” 23

See which planet the **Д** last separated from and “[if] you find it flowing from the benefics, then it is good for every action which he commences except for one who wishes to flee from the government or from his land and a fugitive his master as the condition of these is the best of what is [possible] if the flowing of the **Д** at that hour is from the malefics, and nothing more suitable is fated for them.” 24-5

“Together with this look at the lord of the navamsa<sup>2</sup> and at [the planet] which the **Д** conjoins with as the con- 26-7

---

<sup>1</sup>In a succedent house.

<sup>2</sup>This is the *novenaria signorum* or 9th-part used by Vedic astrologers. Dykes indicates that they were not used in Hellenistic

sideration concerning the commencement of a matter in this way and its end is not correct until you look concerning its commencement at the lord of the lot of fortune and [concerning] its end at [the planet] with which the ☿ conjoins. This section is described in the chapter in which he mentions the matter of flight<sup>1</sup> and theft<sup>2</sup>.”

“He said: Look at the ☿ and the lord of the house in which it is and the star with which the ☿ conjoins and how you find the position of the ☿ and the star with which it conjoins and the power of these two in the cardines as these two are the indicators of this. If the ☿ is with two malefics in one sign and the ☿ is immersed between the two in this sign while the benefics aspect it from quartile, then the misfortune and misery in which men suffer at that hour they will escape from and rid of.” 28-9

“If the ☿ happens to be positioned [where] the lords of its triplicity are benefics, and none of the malefics is in opposition to the ☿, and benefics and malefics aspect it from quartile, then it indicates that they will escape from what happens in it, but they will fall in a second misfortune before they get rid of their first misfortune, [and] then they will escape if God—be He exalted!—wishes. If you find the ☿ in trine of the benefics while the malefics aspect it from quartile, then it indicates the like.” 30-1

“Look concerning the commencement of every matter at the ascendent and the ☿. The ☿ is the strongest of what is [possible] if it is above the earth, especially if this is at night; the ascendent is the strongest of what is [possible] if the ☿ is under the earth by day.” 32

*This is what he says in the introduction to* 33-4

---

astrology and that the word was likely inserted by a Persian editor (p237n32).

<sup>1</sup>see V.36

<sup>2</sup>see V.35

*his book, then he writes for each action which people commence a chapter commensurate with it in which [are recorded] the power of the seven and the twelve and on which day and hour the master of that action because of the seven and the twelve must commence each action.*

He's basically saying Dorotheus wrote a number of chapters on a variety of activities, offering advice on the time of day and under which planets it would be best to start the activity.

### 5.6 One who wishes to build a building

The best time to lay the foundation of a building is when 1  
the ☽ is “*increasing in light*” (waxing), “*increasing in computation*” (moving faster than its average motion), and “*in the middle of the zone which is the equator, ascending toward the North*” (probably means when it is close to zero declination and moving North) and preferably when ♄ or ♀ is with or aspecting the ☽ from a strong place.

If ☿ is with or aspecting the ☽ from a strong place 2  
(instead of a benefic) “*there occurs...difficulty and dissension and slowness or trouble and misery*” in the work.

If ♂ is with or aspecting the ☽ from a strong place, 3  
“*then conflagration or injury from fire will reach that building*.”.

### 5.7 If you wish to demolish a building

It is best to start when the ☽ is “*leaving its elevation, descending towards [its] low point*” (moving from North to South declination). Also prefer a time when the benefics

are strong as they “*indicate ease and success*”. If the malefics are strong they “*indicate slowness and difficulty and misery*.”

### 5.8 Renting out or Leasing property

“If you want to hire something or let out for rent some cultivated land or trees or vineyards or houses or anything like that<sup>1</sup>, then the: “ 1

Asc indicates the conditions under which you will hire or rent the property

7th indicates the owner of the property

10th indicates the price of the rental or lease

4th indicates the outcome of the transaction

If malefics are in (or aspecting?) the ascendent, the person wanting to hire the property or “*take them for rent will withdraw from that and take none of them*” and if he does lease or rent them “*he will deceive him [the owner], desiring that sin and debauchery occur in it.*” 2-3

If the malefics are in or aspecting the 7th, the owner will withdraw from the transaction or, if he goes through with it, “*there will occur debauchery or prostitution and deception in it.*” 4-5

If malefics are in or aspecting the 10th, “*this matter will not be proper, but there will be a pile of coins in the rent.*” 6

If malefics are in or aspecting the 4th, “*then, even if this matter is proper, its outcome will be bad [and] from this there will occur in it misery and what is not desired.*”. The same is also shown by the ♃’s conjunction or separation. 7-8

---

<sup>1</sup>These are all 4th house items: immovable properties.



## 5.9 Buying and Selling

If you want to buy or sell something, look at the ☽ 1  
(which represents the commodity being bought or sold);  
the planet she is separating from represents the seller,  
the planet she is applying to represents the buyer and  
the price.

Malefics with or aspecting any of the three (☽, planet 3-4  
applied to, planet separated from) indicate “*misfortune  
or misery*” for the injured significator. If the benefics  
are with one of the three, “*then joy and happiness, and  
success*” is indicated for the significator “*if God wishes.*”

The angles also give indications: 6-7

- Asc represents the buyer
- 7th represents the seller
- 4th represents the commodity being bought or sold
- 10th represents the price

The benefics in or aspecting an angle represent gain  
for whatever the angle represents, malefics in or aspecting  
represent loss.

## 5.10 The buying of land

The angles give indications as follows:

- 4th the condition of the land itself
- 10th the condition of any trees on the land
- 7th the condition of any grass, herbs, or plants on the  
land
- Asc the lands state of cultivation

If the 4th is in a watery sign “*then it indicates the  
land is near a river or on a sea or in a place abounding  
in water; if it is in a twin sign, then it indicates that this*

*land is not of one direction...*<sup>1</sup>. Examine the malefics and benefics with respect to the angles and judge accordingly.

### 5.11 The buying of slaves

When buying a slave, the sign the ☿ or the Ascendent occupies (when they are not with a malefic or benefic or in aspect to one) indicates:

- ☿ the slave will be a runaway who will not get used to his station and who will be incompatible with his master
- ♄ he will be a worker, patient, strong, obedient, sticking to the work of a slave with his whole self, a humble man
- ♁ if the ☿ is in the last degrees of ♁<sup>2</sup> indications are the same as for ♄
- ♊ they will be weak, lazy, unreliable, [and] putrid [?]
- ♋ he will be a master, trained for [his] craft, educated, good in the goodness of his upbringing, except that he will be wrathful, abounding in food, and he will be frivolous and a pain in [his] belly and stomach will not cease happening to him because of this, and he will be an embezzler of things
- ♌ he will be uncommon, a custodian, a worker, a sincere adviser to his master
- ♍ he will be dedicated to his work, knowledgeable in the work, a legist with respect to religion and quarrels
- ♎ he will be a thief [and] a runaway

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes indicates it might consist of “mountains and plains.” Basically, it will be of two differing terrains.

<sup>2</sup>Dykes notes that Hephaistio equates the last degrees to the 3rd face of ♁ (20-29°)(p243n52)

- ♂ the basis for buying him will not be good, but he will be a master in whom [there is] vanity and admiration for himself
- ♄ he will be a liar and will not cease himself changing over from [one] situation to [another] situation, and there will be some of them who will make a habit of running away
- ♌ he will be a lover of work, a good man, and this is because ♌ is in the figure of a man
- ♁ he will be a slanderer and will conceal in himself disloyalty to his master and calumny to him

But then Dorotheus tells us to “*Look concerning the condition of the seven and their power as they are far stronger than the signs.*”

### 5.12 The buying of animals

If the animal being bought is tamed, used and/or obedient it is best to make the purchase when the Ascendent is in ♏ or in ♎ if the ♎ is also in ♎.

If the animal is not tamed and not used, it is best to make the purchase when the Ascendent and ♎ are in the last degrees of ♏ or ♂.

### 5.13 If you want to free a slave

First see that the condition of the ♎ is not corrupted. If it is not, check to see if the ♎ is separating from a benefic and moving to a malefic; if this is the case, the slave, once freed, will fall into a worse condition than he found himself in under his current master.

If the ♎ is separating from malefics and moving to join a benefic, “*then it will be good for that slave as they*

*will escape from evil and misfortune and will meet with good and joy.”*

The angles also give indications as follows:

Asc the master

7th the slave who is freed

10th the reason the slave was freed

4th the outcome of the matter

If the ☽ is in the 7th with malefics then the freed slave, even though he has escaped from slavery, will be returned to it.

Examine the other angles to see what condition they are in..

#### 5.14 Asking for a ruler or man to grant a request or gift

Ask for the granting of a request or gift when the ☽ is moving faster than its average motion, is waxing, not USB and is in, square, or trine the Ascendent, or, when the ruler of the Ascendent is direct and in the same sign as the ☽ and the two are conjunct.

It will be better if the ☽ is in ☿ or aspecting ☿ while ☿ is with ♃ as if you ask while the ☽ is with or aspecting ♃ the request or gift will not be granted.

If you make the request while ☿ is with ♀ “*and his desire is in front of women and is something pleasing him and he is amused by it, then he will grant [it] in this.*”

If the request and desire are in front of kings and nobles of men and leaders, then you will be disappointed if you ask at an hour when ♃ is retrograde or ♃ aspects ♃.

If the request is made in front of scientists and people of culture and masters of calculation, then pick an hour when ☿ is strong.

If the request is made in front of an older man or a man with no children or a criminal or a slave, then pick an hour when  $\hbar$  is strong.

### 5.15 If you want to write to or teach a man

If you want to write to someone or teach them, pick a time when  $\text{☿}$  is eastern<sup>1</sup>, not USB, retrograde, with or aspected by malefics and he is with a  $\text{♃}$  who is also not corrupted or troubled.

### 5.16 Marriage and matrimony

#### Basic indications

The  $\text{☉}$ , the ascendant, and the planet the  $\text{♃}$  is separating from give the condition of the man. If the  $\text{☉}$  is injured and  $\text{♀}$  is with or aspecting  $\text{♄}$  “*then it indicates that this marriage will not be useful to the man, or a misfortune will reach him, but the woman will attain joy and happiness and benefit.*”

The condition of the woman is shown by  $\text{♀}$ , the 7th sign and the planet the  $\text{♃}$  is applying to. If  $\text{♀}$  is with  $\text{♂}$  or  $\hbar$  or they aspect  $\text{♀}$  “*then it indicates that misery, and misfortune and shame will come to the woman, and the two [spouses] do not delay that there should be separation and estrangement between them.*”

The 10th shows *whatever of agreement or irritation or good or evil will occur between the man and the woman.*”

The 4th shows the outcome of the matter and what is handed over as a dowry or other things.

If the  $\text{♃}$  is injured, “*then evil and misfortune occur to these two together, the man and the woman, from this marriage.*”

---

<sup>1</sup>Rising before the  $\text{☉}$ .

If ☿ is with or in the aspect of the benefics, *“then it indicates that a child will soon be born to these two.”*

If the ♃ or ♀ is in a tropical sign, *“then the marriage will have no good in it as it indicates that this woman is a whore, a harlot who will secretly frequent the beds of men.”*

If the ♃ is in a tropical sign, *“then this marriage will not be good for the man or for the woman as there will be no agreement between these two and [their] association will ot last long.”*

### Indications from the Moon’s sign

What the ♀ signifies in each sign:

- ♊ the marriage will have no good in it
- ♈ if in the beginning or ending degrees<sup>1</sup>, the woman will be disloyal to her husband; in the middle degrees, the marriage will be good
- ♊ in the first half, the marriage will not be good but if the ♃ is in the second half, it will be good
- ♋ avoid marriage when the ♃ is in ♋<sup>2</sup>
- ♌ the marriage will be good but the pair will spoil and waste each others property as well as the property of others
- ♍ if the marriage is to a widowed woman there will be good in it but if to a virgin, it will not be good
- ♎ the courtship and engagement will be good but not the marriage
- ♏ if the ♃ is in the first degrees the marriage will be good, *“but it will not be good at the end of the sign as the association of these two will not last long”*

---

<sup>1</sup>The beginning is probably the 1st decan, the end, the last decan and the middle the 2nd decan (each decan is 10°).

<sup>2</sup>Why? will the woman be too strong?

- ♂ there will be many kinds of things, but only some of them good; it would be better if the marriage is postponed
- ♂ the marriage will not be good if the ♀ is in the first degrees; in the middle and end degrees, there will be good in it
- ♂ the marriage will have no good at all
- ♂ the woman will be spoiled<sup>1</sup> and will not cease wronging her husband but it will be a good marriage in all other ways

### Indications from Venus

If ♀ is with malefics or they aspect her, there will be no good in the marriage; ♀ and the ♀ together are more powerful [for good?].

The marriage will be good, and blessed with children, if ♀ is overcoming ♀ by square<sup>2</sup> while also opposing the ♀, in which case ♀ will be in the 10th from the ♀ and so overcoming her.

It is good for the marriage if there is at one trine between the ♀, ♀ and ♀ but it will be even better if they are in triplicities or signs “*which abound in children and progeny.*”

If ♀ is trine a malefic the husband will be blessed with children “*when in the revolution of the years the benefics arrive at the place of the malefics in the base[-nativity] or aspect it.*”

### The likelihood of children

It is good to look at the nativities of both the man and the woman who are to marry. If each has a benefic in the

---

<sup>1</sup>Not a virgin

<sup>2</sup>If ♀ is in the 10th place from ♀ counting in zodiacal order.

10th, then they will have a child in their first coupling, especially if the woman's 10th is in a sign "abounding with children".

### The likely relationship

If in each nativity you find a benefic in the same place, then it indicates the love of each one for the other. And if you compare the nativities of two men or of two women and you find each has a benefic in the same sign *"then there will be brotherhood and love and agreement between the two."*

If the ☿ of one nativity is in the sign that falls on the other's "house of misery", the 6th, then they will *"subjugate his companion and tower over him until his companion becomes obedient, [and] it is like the obedience of a slave to his master."*

It is best to marry when the ascendant and ☿ are in a sign which indicates a good marriage while none of the malefics are in the sign or aspecting it.

If the marriage happens when ♀ is in a masculine sign and ♄ is in a feminine sign, the marriage will be better for the man than the woman.

The strongest of what is possible for the marriage is if the ☿ is fast in motion and waxing.

If at the time of marriage any of the malefics is with the ☿ or in the ascendant, then the two will not agree on any matter and they will not be reconciled and estrangement and discord will come between them.

If the ☿'s in the nativities are in opposing signs i.e. ☿ in ♊ in one and ♋ in the other, *"then there will come between the two of them estrangement and discord, and they will not be reconciled nor agree on any matter"* as the opposition indicates hostility. But if both have



their ☽ above the earth (in the upper hemisphere of their charts) then *“it indicates that the two of them will come together after the separation, and there will be peace and love between them so that they will be reconciled.”*

### 5.17 The courtship and separation from a woman

The full title of this section is *“The courtship of a woman, and what occurs between a wife and her husband when she quarrels and scolds and departs from her house publicly”*, Dorotheus then says *“if you want to know, if she returns to him, whether he will profit from her or will see joy and happiness or other than this in her, then look at the hour in which you are asked about this at the position of the ☉ and ♀.”*

If the ☉ is in the 10th or 11th while ♀ is retrograde and western<sup>1</sup> *“then it indicates that this woman will return to the house of her husband and will not cease being obedient to her husband from the day she returns [and] she will not contradict [him], but the husband will be blessed with profit and good and joy from her.”* 2

If, instead, ♀ is *“cadent from the cardines in a double place<sup>2</sup>, then it is necessary that he be diligent in seeking the woman whom he courts as profit and joy will come to him from her.”* 3

---

<sup>1</sup>“Western” here could mean “west of the ☉” i.e. rising after the ☉, or, being in the western hemisphere. I’m inclined to think it means “west of the ☉” because the ☉ is the other planet we are told to look at.

<sup>2</sup>Think this occurs when ♀ is in the same sign as the ☉ but she is physically in the 9th or 12th and so cadent and in a “double place” i.e. both planets in ♋ with the MC at 10 ♋ and ♀ at 5 ♋ in the 9th or the ☉ at 15 ♋ in the 11th but with the 12th at 18 ♋ and ♀ in the 12th at 20 ♋.

If , when the woman leaves her husband's house, ♀ is 6  
in the 10th or 11th while the ☉ is below the horizon or  
in a double place which is a cadent, then predict similarly  
about the weakness of the man and the strength of the  
woman."

If the ☉ and ♀ are together in a strong place<sup>1</sup> and 4-5  
♀ is direct in motion, "then it indicates that the woman  
who departs from her house will subjugate her husband  
so that for this reason estrangement and separation will  
come between the two of them, and it indicates that the  
man will repent after the separation, and it will be thus  
in the case of the woman who is courted."

If the woman departs when the ☿ opposes the ☉, 7  
"it indicates that this woman will not be devoted to her  
husband except after pain and suffering."

If the woman leaves when the ☿ is applying to the ☉, 8  
then "it indicates that the woman will soon return to her  
husband and her house in other than pain and without  
afflictions."

If ♀ is retrograde or direct but "in the West"<sup>2</sup> when 9-10  
the woman leaves then "her return to her house will  
be quick. [and] she will be cheerful but will repent for  
what there was of her departure and will experience great  
shame for this." If at the this time you find ♀ "departing  
from the [☉'s] rays and it is western, then it indicates  
like this concerning her return because she will not cease  
repenting until she returns."

In the matter of marriage, always check the ☿ and 11-14  
the sign it is in; if they are both injured, "then there

---

<sup>1</sup>The text actually "If the ☉ and ♀ are together in a strong place, then it indicates like this." I've melded this with the sentence that follows on the assumption that "like this" refers to the next sentence but I may well be wrong and it simply means that both the man and woman are "strong" like their signifiers.

<sup>2</sup>In the 7th?

*will be shouting and discord and hostility and separation between the man and the woman, and the two [of them] will not settle upon anything and will not be reconciled; thus it indicates the subject of friendship and love.” And look at the power of the benefics, if they are strong and in good positions, “the conflict and estrangement and evil will disappear and there will be peace and agreement and good between them, if God—be He exalted!—wishes.”*

### 5.18 A pregnant woman, if her child will die in her body

*“If you wish to extract it from her belly, then it is necessary to treat this in the diminishment of the ♃ from light and when the ♃ is descending from the zone towards the South<sup>1</sup> while ♂ and ♀ aspect from quartile or trine the ascendant and the ♃. This is best if the ascendant and the ♃ are in an effeminate sign and the ascendant and the ♃ are in signs straight in rising.”*

### 5.19 Partnership

If you want to form a partnership with another man for any reason, check the ♃ for the same conditions mentioned under marriage i.e. that she is in a good sign for marriage and free from any impediments. 1

The indications from the Ascendant and the ♃ in the signs are as follows as long as they are not with or in the aspect of either benefics or malefics:

- ☿ the partnership will not last as there will soon be estrangements and separation between the two
- ♄ there will be no good in the outcome as a partnership with a powerful man will be dangerous and if it is with lowly persons there will be discords

---

<sup>1</sup>Moving from North to South in declination.

- ♏ the partnership will be good and both will profit by it; there will be agreement and the preservation of trust between the two
- ♏ each will slander the other and there will be betrayal and anxiety in both
- ♏ there will be profit and a good reputation for both
- ♏ there will be a good profit and wise men will praise them both, and they will have affection among the people and will attain much profit, surplus, and joy from their trading
- ♏ there will be no good in the partnership
- ♏ there will be quarrelling and discord between the two and they will both conceal their disloyalty and slander of the other
- ♏ the partnership will be good but each will act arrogantly toward the other
- ♏ happiness and joy will occur to both
- ♏ misfortune and injury will occur to both
- ♏ the partnership will be elevated and good

Indications from the planets with or aspecting the Ascendant or the ♎:

- ♏ they will not agree on any advice, and whatever of love was between them will cool down, and there will be shouting and discord between them, and misery and separation and upheaval and slowness in work regardless of how long they have known each other
- ♏ if ♏ is with them or aspects them from a strong place then there will be quarrelling and fighting and discord
- ♏ if ♏ is trine or with the Asc and ♎ then profit and good reputation and prestige will occur to them

from their partnership but the more amply provided of the two will have the larger share, he will gain two thirds from this profit at the end because the people of good luck and who possess importance are worthier of preferment than others<sup>1</sup>

Whenever the benefics aspect (whether by sextile, square, trine or opposition) the Asc or ♃, or are with the Asc or ♃, the partnership will be good and there will be profit in it but the good and the profit will be best when the benefics aspect by trine.

## 5.20 Debt and payment for it

The Ascendent signifies the claimant (the person to whom the debt is due) and the condition of the borrower is shown by the 7th, the ♃ and ☿.

If the ♃ is with or aspected by benefics while a malefic injures it, the debtor will pay his debt but will need to re-borrow it. If the ♃ is USB, judge the condition from the ☼ using the same rules and see if he is free of the malefics.

If ☿ is with ♃ *“there will be confusion and deception and trickery in the payment of the debt.”*

If ☿ is with or in the aspect of ♂, the debtor will need to borrow again and the two will fight and shout and quarrel over it.

If the ♃ or the Asc is in the burnt place<sup>2</sup>, or, if the ♃ is in the first degrees of ♈ or ♀ or ♎, *“then it will not be good if you decide anything according to this.”* i.e.

---

<sup>1</sup>I guess the concept of “meritocracy” was conceived long before baseball existed; maybe being born near the Acropolis substituted for being born on 3rd base.

<sup>2</sup>The burnt path is the portion of the zodiac between 19 ♋ and 3 ♌ or 15 ♋ and 15 ♌, depending on who you read.

don't lend, borrow, or attempt to make a judgment from the chart.

If you want to borrow, it is best to do so when the ☽ is waning in ♈ or ♉ or ♊ or ♋ or ♌ and ♍, ♎, and ♏ are aspecting either the ☽ or the Ascendant; and its more powerful if they aspect both.

### 5.21 The journey

If someone wants to travel to another land, examine the Asc for the traveller, the 7th for the land they want to visit, the 10th for what is hoped for from the journey, and the 4th for the outcome.

The best time to leave is when the ☽ is waxing, not USB and not in the 12th or 6th. Also check to make sure the rulers of the Asc and the ☽ are not cadent and ♏ is not USB.

The ☽ in the 6th or 12th would indicate *“that misfortune and pain and misery will happen to him on his journey.”*

A waxing ☽ would indicate *“he will come to the place which he desires in comfort.”*

If the benefics are in the ascendent, *“then it indicates goodness with respect to the condition of that journey.”*

If the benefics are in the 7th, *“then it indicates his profit from his departure to that land which he desires.”*

If the ☽ and ♁ or ♀ or all three are together in the ascendent or the 7th, *“then it indicates that a severe pain and an oppressive disease and damage and shouting and fighting will happen to him on his journey and [in] the land which he comes to.”*

If the ruler of the Asc or the ☽ is stationing, *“then it indicates his absence will be long and there will occur*

*slowness and difficulty in his affair.”*

If either benefic is ☐, ♀, or with the ☽, then *“the commencement of the journey will be good.”* If a malefic is ☐, or ♀ to the ☽ then *“the commencement of this journey will be bad.”*

## 5.22 Departure from a journey

If you want to know when the traveller will return to his land, home and house and whether the return will be deliberate or difficult and slow, and how long it will take, *“then look at the opposition to the ☼ and its quartile.”*

If ♄ or ♀ are in ☐ or ♀ to the ☼ *“then he will soon return from this journey of his safely.”*

If ♃ or ♂ are in ☐ or ♀ to the ☼ *“then his departure will be delayed and will be slow”* and he won't return until:

- the malefics move out of aspect with the ☽ and the ☽ comes to her own ☐ or ♀, or,
- the ☼ returns to where it was at the start of the journey or the opposition of that place and he is free from injury

If he starts the return journey when the ☽ is ☐ or in ♀ to or with the malefics without being in the aspect of a benefic, then his departure will be in difficulty and pain and misery or he will be unable to leave for home because of illness.

If the malefics are not ☐ or in ♀ to the ☽ but the ☽ is with one of the malefics while the benefics are in aspect to it and the ☼ *“then it indicates that misfortune and a hideous, difficult matter and pain will happen to him because of this conjunction, but despite this if the benefics aspect the ☼ and the ☽, then he will return to his land and his home.”*

If a malefic is the sign on the right of the ♃ and the other malefic is in the sign to the left of the ♃ then she is “squeezed” between the malefics and *“it indicates that a difficult, hideous pain will reach him in his journey, and it will be worse for these calamities if ♃ is not aspecting the ♃; but if it is aspecting it, then it will diminish this misfortune and [these] calamities.”*

*If you want to know the condition of his departure from this journey of his, whether it will be soon [and] deliberate or slow [and] remote, then it is necessary to consider concerning this if he has arrived at the land which he desires.”*

Look at the sign the lord of the ascendant is in and the sign of the house of property, the second. If the lord of the second sign is retrograde, *“then it indicates that his departure from this journey of his will be soon [and] quick, [but] bad [and] he will profit in nothing from this journey and will satisfy none of his needs but will be rid of them.”*

If the lord of the second is stationing, *“then it indicates his departure in slowness and a lengthy lingering.”*

If the lord of the second stations and then turns direct, *“then his departure will be middling, but with the satisfaction of [his] need and leisure from the business on which he was travelling.”*

If the lord of the second is in the ascendant or the tenth, *“then it indicates that he will see in this journey of his health and security from misfortunes.”*

If the lord of the second is in the fourth, *“then it indicates that there will be fear of death for him in this journey of his.”*

If the ♃ is with ♃ when he reaches where he was going, *“then it will be a sign indicating slowness and injury*



*in property, and he will stay behind in that absence of his because of illness and he will persist in it."*

If the ☽ is with ☿ and ♂ opposes both of them, *"then it indicates that there will reach him in this journey of his beating and breaking and injury and the rest of misfortunes."*

If ☿ and ♄ are in opposition to the ☽, *"then it indicates that there will happen to him in this journey of his slowness and estrangement, and he will conceal [his] perfidy and stealing and evil, but he will be suspected and seized on account of this and imprisoned, and his wealth will be destroyed."*

If ♂ is in ♋ with the ☽ or if it aspects the ☽ from ♋, *"then it indicates that there will happen to him on this journey of his and [during] his absence beating and breaking and injury."*

If the ☽ is injured, look at the sign she is in as well as the sign of the planet injuring her; if they are both in signs having the nature of beasts, the injury will come from beasts; if they are in human signs, the injury will be caused by men.

If the journey is begun when ☿ is with the ☽ and ♄ aspects them from trine or quartile, *"then it indicates that his business on this journey will be easy, favorable, [and] beneficial, [and] the departure will be quick in ease and well-being."*

### 5.23 Buying a ship or building it

If you want to buy or a build a ship it best to start when ♄ or ♀ is in the 4th, with both in aspect to the ascendent and the ☽.

It is best if the sign on the 4th is moist, one of the water signs, or a sign whose nature is one of sea animals

or a house of either ♋ or ♎.

It is best when the ☽ is in the ascendent and one of ♈, ♀, ♎, ♏, ♐, or the end of ♑ (which is watery while the beginning is earthy) are on the ascendent. It's also good if the ascendent is ♋ and the ☽ is in it. Although the best is of these is ♈, then ♋, then Gemini, and then the end of ♑.

### 5.24 Commencing to build a ship

The best of what is possible is when the ☼ is trine the benefics while the ☽ is waxing and fast, increasing in latitude and longitude and in the terms of a benefic. Be sure not to start the work when the Moon and the ascendent are being harmed by ☿ as it *“indicates that the outcome of this work will be bad [and] harmful because of fire or anger or oppression.”*

If the work commences when the ☽ is in ♊, with, square or opposed by ☿, *“then it indicates that misfortune will reach this ship from water and what is contained in it for the life of its people and their livelihood, and burning will reach it, and a severe misfortune and great fear will happen to its people, and all of them will be cast in the sea [and there will be] a desire for the turning of men from death.”*

If the ☽ is not in ♊, but is in a watery sign while ☿ and the ☼ are together or in square or opposition, *“it indicates that misfortune and breaking will reach this ship from the coast of the sea or from a stone or a mountain that is in the sea, and the planks of the ship will be separated on the [different] areas of the sea, and whatever of thing[s] is in it will be lost.”*

If the ☽ is not in a dry sign, *“then it indicates that misfortune will reach the ship on the sea from pirates and those who will cut [it] off on the sea and kill its people so*

*that they will be drowned for this reason and what is in it will be lost."*

### 5.25 Commencing to row the ship in the water

Indications from the position of the ☽ in the signs at launch time if neither the benefics nor malefics are in aspect:

- ☿ above the earth in the first 10°, the ship will have a good and safe departure
- ♄ waves will cause problems and if the malefics aspect the ☽ the ship will be lost to the waves
- ♂ in the first 8°, the ship will reach its destination and there will be profit from it but its departure and return journey will be slow
- ♁ the waves will not harm the ship and its people will profit from it
- ♂ the men aboard the ship will be harmed and if malefics aspect the ☽ misfortune will pile on misfortune
- ♊ the departure will not be deliberate or soon
- ♋ in the first 10° there will be no good in the journey by land or sea; if in greater degrees, the journey will go well by both land and sea
- ♌ the ship will be safe at sea but some of its people will be detained
- ♍ calamities and misfortune from the waves will reach the ship
- ♎ if not in the first 9°, then things will go well but some of the ship's people will be fear being detained
- ♏ the return journey will be slow and lingering but the outcome will be good

✠ misfortune and calamities will reach the ship and her people

If the ☽ is below the earth and in the aspect of benefics or malefics, then it is bad.

If the ☽ is below the earth in the same sign as a stationing ♄, *“then it indicates that great pains and a great [and] severe misfortune will happen to them and a hideous fear will befall them and strong waves until the water will enter the ship and the people of that ship for whom death and loss was judged in dampness or water will be lost in those waves.”*

If the ☽ is above the earth and a stationing ♄ is ☊, *“then it indicates that the people of the ship will throw much of what goods [they have] on this ship into the water in the hope of saving them[selves] and they will be saved from this after pain and severe misery while the ☽ is under the earth.”*<sup>1</sup>

If the ☽ is above the earth and ♄ is ☊ but not stationing, *“then it indicates a hideous matter as if they were at the edge of a razor, but together will this fear they will be better in [their] condition, and no harm will reach them except for a little when ♄ is in its station.”*<sup>2</sup>

If ♄ was in the same situation with ☊, *“the fear will increase the misery and hideousness; but if the benefics aspect ♄, then this misfortune will be easier and more comfortable, especially if the benefics aspect from the right side of ♄ and [from] a strong place”*<sup>3</sup>

♄ will give these same indications if he is in the ascendent even if he does not aspect the ☽.

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes has “even if the ☽ is under the earth”.

<sup>2</sup>Dykes has “when ♄ is <not> in his station.”

<sup>3</sup>If the benefic is in the 9th, 10th, or 11th from ♄ in which case they “overcome” ♄.

If  $\mathfrak{h}$  is in the ascendent and it occupies the same sign in the natal chart of the person on the ship or if  $\mathfrak{h}$  is  $\Delta$ ,  $\square$ , or  $\mathfrak{p}$  to the sign he ( $\mathfrak{h}$ ) occupies in the person's nativity, *"then it will be more hideous and worse in [his] condition."*

If  $\mathfrak{o}$  is found in the same conditions as were given for  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{o}$  is below the earth while the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is above, then things will be worse but the fear and misfortune will not be because of waves but will come from *"shouting and arguing and every discord, from which there will occur enmity between the people of this ship and whatever enemies there are on the sea. It also indicates difficult surgical operations and a breaking of their joints will reach them, and their blood will flow, and the like. This violence and hideousness will increase if  $\mathfrak{x}$  is with  $\mathfrak{o}$ ."*

If  $\mathfrak{h}$ ,  $\mathfrak{o}$ , and  $\mathfrak{x}$  aspect the  $\mathfrak{D}$  while she is above the earth, *"then they will have neither escape nor deliverance from this misfortune whose condition is hideous. It indicates [what is] like this if  $\mathfrak{o}$  is mixed with  $\mathfrak{x}$ ."*

If  $\mathfrak{o}$  or  $\mathfrak{h}$  aspects the  $\odot$  while the other aspects the  $\mathfrak{D}$ , then a difficult and hideous fear will reach them and it will be worse if the aspect is an  $\mathfrak{p}$ .

If the  $\odot$  and the  $\mathfrak{D}$  are not injured while the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is above the earth and square  $\mathfrak{L}$  when putting the boat in the water then it *"indicates that their actions will be favorable, easy, good and they will not be cut off from whatever of good they hope for and arrange in it, but they will obtain it, if God wishes."* And it is even better if  $\mathfrak{f}$  is with  $\mathfrak{L}$  or aspects the  $\mathfrak{D}$  from another sign.

The power of  $\mathfrak{x}$  is increased for good or ill depending on whether it is with benefics or malefics.

If  $\mathfrak{f}$  alone aspects the  $\mathfrak{D}$  while the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is above the earth, *"it indicates that these waves and the misfortune will not reach them in their faces, and they will be blessed*

*with profit and good in it, but it is not like the aspect of ♄ and ♀ together because ♀ alone is weak.”*

*“If the ☽ and ♀ are together in the same sign under the earth and ♀ is under the [Sun’s] rays, then it indicates that these waves will not befall them in their face[s], and this ship will reach its destination which they desire without misfortune.”*

*“If ♄ and ♀ together aspect the ☉ and the ☽ while the ☽ is with ☿, then it indicates that the commencement at that hour of rowing the ship in the water or in the sea is like the best of what is [possible] of commencements.”*

If the malefics are in the ascendent and the ☽ is with the benefics in the descendent or if the ☽ is with the benefics in the ascendent and the malefics are opposite, in the descendent, *“then misfortune will reach this ship from the sea, but its people will escape from that fear, if God wishes and judges it.”*

*“Even if the ☽ is without the aspect of the benefics in a cardine and it is in one of the signs which we named in the introduction to this” [section], “[saying] that [it will be good] if the ☽ is in them, it will be good, if God wishes.”*

If the ☽ and ascendent are not with malefics or benefics and no benefics or malefics aspect either one, *“then let this commencement of rowing the boat in the water and the sea be when the ascendent and the ☽ are in one of the signs which I reported and approved for commencing this matter.”*

The commencement *“is when the ship is released and pushed in the water, and the commencement of the matter for one who rides on it is first when the man places his foot in it. If the ship and its people arrive at the land that you aimed for, then it is necessary to consider con-*

*cerning the commencement of the arrival of the ship and its people if they are one.”*

If someone is starting a journey by land, and the **♄** is in the 7th, not in a dry sign, but the malefics are in or aspecting dry signs, or, if starting a journey by sea and the **♄** is not in a watery sign or in a sign whose nature is wet, while the malefics are in or aspecting it, the journey (by land or sea) “*will not be good, but discomfort and misery will reach him.*”

“*If the ♄ is injured while the benefics are in the dry, earthy signs or aspect these signs, then it indicates that misfortune will barely not reach them in this journey of theirs, and if it does reach them, then it will be less than what I mentioned.*”

“*If the masters of this journey are some for whom death is not judged and whose years are not determined, then they will depart for their houses; if misfortune does reach them, then it will be less than what I mentioned.*”

“*The malefics among the stars are the worst of what is [possible] in damages, ♂ if the traveller is a traveller of the land, and ♄ [for a traveller] on sea and water; and it is the worst of what is [possible in damages if ♄ and ♀ do not aspect these two.*”

“*The worst of what is [possible] is the ♄ in a term or figure [decan] of the “ [malefics<sup>1</sup>] “with a malefic aspecting the ♄ from opposition or quartile and ♄ and ♀ not aspecting the ♄ either together or one of the two.*”

## 5.26 The arrival of a book, message, or letter

If a book, message, or letter arrives and, in the base chart,

- ♄ is in the aspect of benefics, or

---

<sup>1</sup>The text has ‘benefics’ but Dkyes has ‘infortunes’ or malefics, which makes more sense.

- ☿ is a sign where there are no malefics, or
- ☿ is with the ☼ and ♃ and benefics aspect

then “there is good in the book or letter.”

“Concerning the report which arrives in the book or letter, look at the ☼ and the ♃ in their motion as, if they are both free from the malefics while the ♃ is with ☿ in one of those signs of which I wrote that [it is good if] they are free from malefics and the benefics are in them or aspect them, then there are happiness and joy in the book or message or letter which reaches the master of that nativity at that hour.”

“If, at that hour when the book or message or letter arrives, the ♃ is in one of those signs and a malefic is with it while none of the benefics is with it or aspects it, then in the book or message or letter which arrives at that hour [there will be] discord and misfortune and injury.”

“If ☿ is in some one of the places of the benefics from among those signs and is eastern while the benefics and the malefics aspect it together, then the message is good.”

“There were some of the scientists who considered concerning this matter in another way. They said: they look a ♃ and ♀ in their transit. If they reach the sign in which the two luminaries were at the nativity of this man or are in quartile of that sign in which the two luminaries were, or [if] the sign in which ♃ and ♀ are in their transits, this is free from the malefics while ☿ is free from the malefics and aspects of ♃ or ♀, then in this book or message or letter which reaches the master of this nativity at that hour there will be joy and happiness and profit.”

“If in this transit ♄ or ♂ or both of them are in the sign in which the two luminaries were in the nativity or are in quartile of that sign while ☿ is with them or aspects them, then the book or message or letter which at that



*hour reaches the master of this nativity will be bad, and if he is a traveller at that hour, injury will befall him."*

### 5.27 Bondage and chains

If a man is put into bondage or chains "*because of the anger of a king or a man against his slaves*", look to the sign the Moon was in at the moment he was bound:

- ☿ indicates the chains will soon be loosened
- ♄ indicates he is chained because of the property he sought to have, and that property was taken from him and that the chains will stay on him for a long time "*but he will be saved from this pain in his body after [his] misfortune*"
- ♁ if the chains are not removed within three days they will stay on him for long time ]
- ♄ the chains will stay on him for a long time
- ♁ "*these chains are because of a man who has importance and power, [and] he will not escape from the chains until they been a long time on him*"
- ♁ indicates a mixture of good and bad with the good being more abundant and "*there will be ease in him*"
- ♁ the chained person will escape from the chains
- ♁ the chains will be on for a long time and cause him to be chronically ill but at the end "*there will be release from them*"
- ♁ the chains will stay on for a long time
- ♁ there will be no escape from the chains
- ♁ the chains will cling to him all his life, he will be shackled and not able to escape them except through death
- ♁ same as ♁

If the ☽ is with or aspected by the malefics the situation will be altered.

If ♄ or ♀ is with the ☽ or in the Ascendant or aspects both the ☽ and the Ascendant, then the person will be quickly released from his chains.

If ☿ and ♄ are with or aspecting the ☽ *“then it indicates that [his] power in escaping from these chains will increase and it will hasten it, if God-be He exalted!-wishes.”*

If ♂ is with the ☽ or aspects it, then *“it indicates that beating and difficulties and burning or bite[s] or sting[s] will reach him in these chains, or a surgical operation with a piece of iron will happen to him from this suffering and pain.”*

If ♄ is with or aspecting the ☽ then his misery will last a long time and he'll stay shackled and not be free except after pain and misery.

If ☿, ♄, ♂, and the ☽ are all together or the ☽ is in the aspect of all three, *“then it indicates he will die in these chains”*

The Ascendant has indications similar to those of the ☽ for anyone in chains if the ☽ is decreasing and it will be worse for them if the ☽ is increasing. The ☽'s weakening is when she is in the same degree as the ☼ or in its opposition as *“then this is an indicator that these chains will be misery and trouble, [but] then he will be freed from them.”*

If the ☽ joins with ☿ while ☿ is western, it indicates release from chains.

If the ☽ is *“departing from the middle of the equator, being taken towards the qibla [the South] with ☿ and ♀, then it indicates release from this soon.”*

If  $\mathfrak{h}$  and  $\mathfrak{L}$  aspect the  $\mathfrak{D}$  from trine, “then it indicates that the owner of these chains will not escape until he has been a long time in them, but he will be freed with a good reputation and profit.”

The region from the midheaven to the angle of the fathers (the fourth) is called the “region of descent, which is concealed; they call the region from the cardine of the fathers [the fourth] to midheaven the region of ascent, which is the region of the ascendent.” If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the region of descent, which is concealed, and the  $\mathfrak{O}$  is aspecting the  $\mathfrak{D}$  “then it indicates that the owner of the chains will be set free of it quickly in death from it or [in] life.”

If the  $\mathfrak{D}$  is in the region of ascent and  $\mathfrak{O}$  is trine while  $\mathfrak{L}$  is square, “then the owner of these chains will escape from his chains and his bonds.”

If  $\mathfrak{h}$  is with the  $\mathfrak{D}$  while  $\mathfrak{L}$  aspects it from the 10th or by square then it means release from the chains.

If  $\mathfrak{O}$  aspects the  $\mathfrak{D}$  from square and  $\mathfrak{h}$  from trine, “then these chains will stay a long time on him and pain and misery will happen to him in [his] escape from them.”

If  $\mathfrak{O}$  aspects the  $\mathfrak{D}$  from trine and  $\mathfrak{h}$  from square, “then it indicates that misery and effort will reach the owner of these chains, then he will break these chains and bonds and will escape from them in flight.”

“It is necessary to look concerning the house of the fathers [the fourth] more than the [other] cardines because in it is the clarification of every outcome.”

### 5.28 Judgment about what may not be afterwards of a matter which one hopes for, or according to this of things

If the query is about “*what will not be afterwards, but [that] which is*” or if it’s about “*a thing one hopes for*” or an action that has not yet begun, look at the conjunction of the **Д** and its “flowing away” (separating) in “quartile”.

If the query is about escape from pain or disease or imprisonment or flight, look at the planet the **Д** is separating from as the conjunction indicates “*what is to come of matters*” and “flowing away” (separating) indicates “*what has been and is passed*”<sup>1</sup>.

### 5.29 Query about the sick

If the question is about a sick person and, at the time, the **Д** is flowing (separating) from the benefics, “*then it indicates [his] recovery from this illness.*”

But if the **Д** is flowing from **♂**, “*then it indicates that the illness is from a fever which will exhaust him, or [that] one of his limbs will be cut from his body with an iron [knife], or [that] in cutting or phlebotomy he will be bled from his veins with an iron [knife].*” and if the **Д** is waxing, “*then it will be more hideous and worse for his illness.*”

If the **Д** is flowing from **♄**, “*then it indicates a fever that shakes [him], and a hidden malaise in [his] diet, or some of this will reach him in [his] belly or in [his] body, or his spleen will swell, and sometimes it will bring down a miserable disease on him, and a wound and difficult sore will reach him so that his limbs will be wounded or will be*

---

<sup>1</sup>Dkyes thinks Dorotheus is trying to express the idea that “separation” shows the current condition and the next planet the **Д** contacts “will show the result of the future action.”

*dislocated, and sometimes [his] black bile will be stirred up in him until his intestines are cramped and burn, and it is an indicator that every illness which reaches him will stay in him a long time."*

### 5.30 The commencement of all things

At the beginning of any action, look to the lord of the action. Sometimes you commence a matter when the benefics aspect the ☿ and the ascendent but the lord of the action is under the ☼'s rays or injured or does not aspect the ascendent and is in a bad place; in that case, the action will be bad and no good in it.

If you want to buy land or give the power of attorney to someone, then look at the power of ♄ and ♃.

Look to ♀ if it is a taking away or a gift or a quarrel or a practice or a partnership or an insult or a love or trade or seeking culture or something similar.

Look to ♀ if it is a wedding or a marriage or something pleasant of the acts of ♀.

If its a fight or arms or something similar then look to ♂.

Look to ♃ if its a matter of kings, requests of kings, or government.

If it is something that does not involve evil, or ruse, or secrecy then look to the ☼ and ♃.

Every time ♃ aspects a planet it turns it towards good; ♀ does the same but not in momentous affairs unless it is with ♃ or ♃ also aspects.

The power of ♀ is in the love that is between two people or food or perfume or things similar to these.

In every time and in every situation **♄** is good because it increases the propriety and the good or diminishes and destroys the evil and misfortune.

### 5.31 The condition of someone who's sick

If you want to know the condition a sick person form whom death and misfortunes are feared, look at his nativity at the time he takes ill, and see in which signs the malefics and benefics were.

If the **♃** “*in its course and its transit*” is in a sign occupied by a malefic in the nativity and the malefics aspect the transit **♃** from square while the benefics do not aspect by transit or in the nativity then it indicates the illness will be hideous and he will not escape from it and it will be worse if time-distributor without the lord of the limit has also arrived in the same sign.<sup>1</sup>

If the time-distributor has arrived at this sign, or a sign like it, one aspected by **♄** or **♂** in the nativity, then it indicates a hideous illness he will not escape.

The disease or pains in the body will be according to the sign.

If the **♃** is in a two-bodied sign, especially **♊** or **♋**, while **♄** and **♂** are with it, enclosing it, and if the time-distributor arrives at the aspect of **♄** and **♂**, then it indicates that gout will reach this native in his two hands and his two feet.

---

<sup>1</sup>Think this means that if the transit **♃** and/or the radix **♃** are being aspected by malefics without the aspect of a benefic things won't go well. Dykes, in a footnote, thinks the “time-distributor” is the projected Ascendant and the “lord of the limit” is the term lord currently active by “direction through the bounds”.

### 5.32 Will the native's property increase or decrease?

If you want to know when the property of the native will increase or decrease, then look at the second sign from the ascendant which is the house of property. If the distributor of the time is in this sign while the malefics are in it or aspecting it by square or opposition then the native's property will be diminished.

If the benefics are there or aspecting it while the distributor is in the term of one of the benefics, *"then it indicates that the native's property and his happiness will increase"*.

Also examine the ☾, if it is transiting or otherwise moving through a sign occupied by the malefics in the nativity or through their square or opposition without the aspect of the benefics *"then it indicates that at that hour pain and grief and worry and misery will reach that native."*

If the ☾ arrives in the sign he occupied in the nativity and the benefics are in the same sign or aspect the ☾ by trine<sup>1</sup> while the malefics are not aspecting them *"then joy and benefit and good will reach this native because of clothes or other than this because of [something] like what had not befallen this native before this, so that his happiness and his joy will be more intense than this."*

### 5.33 Which of two adversaries facing a judge will prevail?

Look at the ascendant at the time you are asked as it indicates *"the matter of incitements and commencements of quarrels"*. In a fixed sign it indicates the *"seeker of the*

---

<sup>1</sup>The text actually says "the benefics do not aspect the Moon from trine" but that doesn't make any sense given what follows.

*right will be keen in his request and will not turn away from his argument”.*

If the ascendant’s sign is double-bodied, it indicates the “seeker of the right” will be of two minds and regret his quarrel. If the ascendant’s sign is tropical, *“then it indicates that this quarrel will not be finished and will have no end.”*

If ♂ is with or aspects the ascendant it indicates grief and shame will reach the one who started the quarrel.

If ♀ is in the ascendant with benefics or aspects the ascendant, it indicates the “seeker of the right” will attain dirhams (UAE currency) and goods from his adversary and will turn from quarrelling with the defendant.

If ♄ is with or aspects the ascendant *“then misery will happen to the seeker because of the quarrel.”*

If, at the time the question is asked, the malefics aspect the midheaven then the quarrel will not be ended but be put before a second judge and the judges will come to shame and a base reputation and disgrace and the two adversaries will settle the matter between themselves by coming to an agreement on amends. If ♄ is in the midheaven, the judges, by the injustice of their judgment, will suffer shame, misery, and loathing. If benefics are in the midheaven the judge is just and will not be unjust in his decision.

See the condition of the defendant in the seventh sign. If the malefics are in or aspecting the sign then misery and misfortune and pain will occur to him. If ♀ is with the malefics in this sign or aspects it, it indicates that the defendant will be deprived of his wish by injustice and false testimony.

For the outcome of the quarrel, look to the fourth house. If the ruler of the ascendant, midheaven or seventh house is eastern and in the same sign as the lord of the



fourth then victory is indicated for the one more suited to the angle whose ruler is eastern with the lord of the fourth unless that planet is under the Sun's rays which indicates loss and defeat.

If the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the seventh are both eastern and with the lord of the fourth it indicates the two adversaries will become reconciled and friendship will thrive between the two. If both of them are under the Sun's rays with the lord of the fourth, then the quarrel will be long and linger and will have no end.

*"The benefics indicate what there is of success and victory and a just judgment."*

If the malefics are direct, western, in an angle but not in their own dignities the owner of the angle will be defeated but if they are in their dignities the owner of the angle *"will attain success by means of the injustice of the judge or because of bribes or forcibly or [by means of] favoritism."*

*"The second sign from the seventh indicates the defendant's assistance."*

If the lord of the ascendant and the lord of the midheaven are together in the same sign or in the ascendant or if the lord of the midheaven aspects the ascendant or the lord of the ascendant *"then it indicates that the judge will help the seeker and will be on his side."* but if the lord of the midheaven and the lord of the descendent are in the described condition, *"then the judge's sympathy and assistance will be for the defendant, and he will attain success because of this."*

In relation to all these subjects (seeker, defendant, judges, quarrelling, and who will win) also pay attention to the ♃, if it is in an angular or succedent house and is injured or it conjoins with malefics before entering under the Sun's rays then the person connected with the

house it occupies will lose and suffer misfortune or regret because of the quarrel.

If two adversaries quarrel about a debt or money and bring it before the judges when the ☽ is waxing, then the ☽ is an indicator for the one who lent the money and the ☾ is the indicator for the debtor. If the ☽ is waning, then the indicators are reversed. The indicator who is has the closest aspect to the Ascendant is the more powerful and to that one belongs success.

In every case, always look at Fortune; if she is in the ascendent or second sign from the ascendent, then success will belong to the seeker. If she is in the 7th or 8th sign from the ascendent then success belongs to the defendant. If the lord of the lot is in the 4th and aspects both the 1st and 7th, the two adversaries will be reconciled of their own accord but if it is in the 10th and aspects the 1st and 7th then the reconciliation between the two will be because of the judge.

If the lord of the ascendent and the lord of the 7th are in the same sign in their figures decans, it indicates that the two will be enemies. If the two are in a sign ruled by

- ♊ then their quarrel will be stirred up because of children or one who is in the position of a child.
- ♀ the quarrel will be because of women or sisters or one in who's position is like that
- ♂ the quarrel will be because of sisters or the children of sisters or brothers
- ♏ or ☾ the quarrel will because of fathers or grandfathers or one who is in a like position
- ♍ the quarrel will be because of mothers or one in a like position
- ♌ it indicates the quarrel will be because of older brothers or brothers and friends

**5.34 On whether a person will leave his land**

If asked whether a person will leave his land and city or travel or be exiled from it, then look at the ☿; if it is flowing from benefics while a benefic is in the ascendent and is aspecting the ☿, it indicates that he will return to home and city. If the ☿ is separating from the malefics while the ascendent and the ☿ are injured, then it indicates misfortunes and misery will reach the person and that he will not be able to return to his home and city.

**5.35 On the recovery of goods stolen, lost, or mislaid**

If asked about whether stolen, lost, or mislaid goods will be recovered look at the two lights and if, at the time of asking, each light is in trine to its dispositor, the goods will be recovered quickly and without pain.

If the ☉ and ☿ are square, the lost goods will be found with trouble and after a long time; the thieves will have moved the goods from their original hiding place to another.

If the ☉ and ☿ are opposed, the goods will be found, with trouble, after a time.

If the ☿ is found in a house along with the planet owning the house, then the goods will be found; especially if the ☉ also aspects the place.

If the dodecatemorion (12th part) of the ☿ is in one of the ascendant, midheaven, the same sign as the ☉, or the sign holding the lord of the ☿, or a sign with an eastern<sup>1</sup> planet, then the goods will be found.

---

<sup>1</sup>Probably means a planet that is eastern with respect to the ☉.

If the ☉ is with, or aspects, the Lot of Fortune, it indicates the goods will soon be recovered.

If the ☿ is with or aspects Fortune without it being with or aspected by the ☉ it indicates the goods will be recovered but with slowness and trouble.

The ☿ or both lights are in the ascendant it indicates a quick recovery of what was lost or stolen.

If the two lights are in the sign opposite the ascending sign will only recover the goods with slowness and trouble or a quarrel and insult and fighting.

If the ☉ is alone in the ascendant and the ascendant is not in ♊, ♒, or ♑ (all signs which oppose the signs where the ☉ is in his triplicity) he will recover what was lost or stolen. *If [the ☉] is in one of those three signs it will be bad and it will not be suitable for him to possess it.*

If the person's nativity is known and, at the time the goods were lost or stolen, the ☉ was in the ascendant while the ☿ was in a sign that holds a benefic in the nativity, the indication is that the person will recover what was lost.

### Unlikely to be found

If the ☿ is in the end degrees of the sign opposite the ascendant sign or the second sign from it, the indication is the goods will not be found, but, if the ☉ is trine the ☿, then the goods will likely be found as the ☉ illuminates everything dark and overcomes it, if God wishes.

If the ☿ is in the “burned way” then it indicates the person will either not recover the goods or they will recover them only after trouble and delay.

If both lights are under the Earth it indicates the goods will disappear and not be recovered.

If neither light is with or aspecting Fortune it indicates the owner might as well not bother looking for the goods as it would bring only toil and not accomplish anything.

If the ☽ is under the ☉'s rays and waxing it indicates the person will not perfectly recover their goods "*because this is an unavoidable judgment*".

### Using the angles for various signifiers

Some ancients used the ascendant (1st) as the signifier of the stolen or lost goods, the midheaven (10th) for the good's owner; the sign opposite the ascendant (7th) for the thief, and IC (4th) for the thieves den and hiding place.

If benefics are in the ascendant the goods will be returned to the owner.

If a planet in the midheaven is in his own dignities then the owner of the goods is sincere and will seek his good in the proper manner; if the planet is not in its own dignities it has no power in the midheaven and the seeker is not truthful.

If the sign on the IC is mutable the stolen property belongs to two men; if in a tropical sign, it belongs to one man; if in a feminine sign the goods belong to women.

If the sign on the IC is moist then what was stolen or lost is near a sea or spring or stream or a valley or a river or a canal or a place where there is water. If in a quadruped sign the stolen goods are in "*the dung of sheep or the shelter of animals or in the place where animals are tied up or the habitations of animals*".

If the IC is in a human sign and ☿ and ♀ aspect it, then the goods are in a good and clean place. If, instead, ♂ aspects, they are in a place where fire is found, or a blacksmith's forge or something similar. If ♁ aspects, the

thieves handed the goods over to slaves who placed them in a dark house or a filthy place open to the wind or a lofty, moist, dark, and dirty place.

If ♄ occupies the IC while ♃ aspects the place then the goods were handed over to a person of noble lineage. If ♂, rather than ♄, is in the IC then the person receiving the stolen goods will have the loathsome character of a slave or one free for the day.

If, instead, ♀ is in the first 20 degrees of the IC then the thieves will have stolen the goods from propertied women of noble lineage. If it is in the last 10 degrees of the sign of the IC then slave girls or those who do the work of slave girls will take the stolen items from the thieves.

If, instead, ☿ is in the first 10 degrees of the sign on the IC, then a man of noble lineage and wisdom and of good reputation will take what was stolen from the thieves. If in the middle 10 degrees, a poor man will take the goods from the thieves and will be “*master of wealth and good fortune for the day*”. If in the last 10 degrees, the man who takes the goods from the thieves is a slave or a man who does the work of slaves.

### Indications from the Lights

If the ☉ aspects Fortune then the owner will soon recover his goods. If, instead, the ☿ aspects Fortune without the aspect of the ☉, the goods will be recovered after a delay. If neither light aspects Fortune or the Ascendant the goods will only be recovered after trouble and pain.

If the ☿ is square, trine, or in the sign opposite the ascendant then the lost or stolen goods will be recovered.

If the ☉ was trine, square, or in opposition to the ☿ while he was in the ascendant or midheaven or with Fortune or aspecting the angles then the goods will be properly recovered.

If the **♎** is the last degrees of a sign (the 3rd decan), then the stolen goods will be moved from place to place.

### **Moon's term gives condition of the goods**

The **♎** is indicator of the condition of the goods, lost or stolen. If the **♎** is in the term of:

- ♈** while **♈** is in the midheaven or in its exaltation, then the goods stolen are costly and necessary in farming or building or acquiring property. If **♈** is under the earth (in the 4th?) then the goods are filthy, shabby, and worn. If **♈** is in a cadent place or in **♏**, his Fall, then the goods are vile, filthy, and broken and if he aspects the **♎** then it indicates there is a coarseness or roughness in what was stolen or lost.
- ♌** the goods are costly, gold or silver or silk brocades or lustrous in some manner; all things which only the wealthy can afford
- ♊** the goods are something that was worked in fire or a blacksmith's forge or kiln or something similar. If **♊** and **♋** both aspect the **♎** then the goods were worked by a master craftsman. If **♊** does not aspect the **♎** but **♋** or **♌** do, then the goods are dyed or ring-stones or amulets or covered with all sorts of jewels.
- ♍** what was stolen or lost is gold or silver or a jewel or a costly stone or garments made of beautiful cloth or something dyed in fiery colours, or perfumed or a necklace or trinkets used by women, or something moist, with an agreeable odour, which has a lustre and which women crave or are astonished at. If the **♎** is square **♍** or with **♍** in a feminine sign, the goods were stolen from a woman. If **♊** aspects **♍** then the object is a jewel that has no lustre but was worked with delicate craftsmanship.

✂ then what was lost or stolen was a book or ledger full of layers [pages?] or a ledger which contains a book of the learned or what is necessary for women or men, or what is necessary on journeys like denarii and dirhams and what has been minted into coinage.

### What the Moon's sign indicates

The power of the signs is to be mixed with the terms.

☿ garments, clothes, or trinkets worn on the head or face were lost or stolen

♄ what was stolen gold or silver or trinkets used for adornment<sup>1</sup> or they are something useful for vows<sup>2</sup> and for mosques and deities

♂ dirhams or denarii (coins) was stolen or something useful in trades or a ledger which is a book or an idol useful for the deities

♁ a costly gem or something moist was stolen

♁ something gold or silver or made from brass was stolen

♁ a woman's trinkets or denarri (coins) was stolen

♁ what was stolen has a mixture of things in it or is something useful for the body, or bought for its weight or trinkets useful for eternity

♁ something of gold, silver, or brass was stolen or else a stone with no lustre

♁ something variegated with all sorts of jewels that is craved and competed for and is precious to its people

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes says for things that adorn the neck.

<sup>2</sup>Dykes has 'offerings'.



- ♄ like the things stolen or lost when the ☿ is in ♎; a costly gem or something moist or similar to these things  
 ♁ like the things stolen or lost when the ☿ is in ♏; something made of gold or silver or brass or similar to these  
 ♃ like the things stolen when the ☿ is in Sagittarius; jewelled and precious to its people

### More on the Moon

If the ☾ is waxing and moving faster than average then the goods stolen were new, if the ☾ is waning and moving slower than average the goods stolen were shabby or worn.

If the Ascendant or a conjunction of the ☾ occurs in a mutable sign then the goods are folded or is made of joined parts.

The quantity of goods stolen is shown by the number of signs<sup>1</sup> between the ☾'s sign and ♃'s. If the number is even (feminine) then the goods are tied together or there was more than one good stolen. If odd (masculine) then only one thing was stolen.

### Identifying the thief

If the two lights aspect the Ascendant then the theft was an inside job. If only one light aspects the ascendant and the other is not in the ascendant and does not aspect it then the thief was someone who frequents the place and is known to the owner. If neither light aspects the ascendant the thief is an outsider, unknown to the good's owner, and someone who has not frequented the place.

---

<sup>1</sup>Pingree says to count the degree between the beginning of the ☾'s sign and ♃, I've followed Dykes interpretation as it makes more sense given the context.

For a description of the thief examine the planets in the 7th, if it's empty, look for planets in the 9th or 12th; if both are empty see which planet the ☽ is with or, if alone, which planet she is separating from and applying as these will indicate the key characteristics and colouring of the thief.

If the indicator of the thief is:

- ♄ they will be white, fat, great in his eyes, the white's of the eyes will be smaller than expected, their beards will be round and curly and by nature they will be gentle and good
- ♏ the thief has a repulsive face, black in colour; his gaze is toward the ground, he is a broken man with small eyes; slim, twisted in his gaze; with a pallid look; hairy limbs, eyebrows grown together; he is a liar, sickly, his gentleness and nature is in accordance with secrets and tricks; he is profound, contemplative, and has ideas
- ♂ he will be reddish in colour with lank, reddish hair; he is sharp in his vision, fat-cheeked, gay, a master of joking, capricious, turning himself from one condition to another, sharp in his glance; he rushes to injure men and to obliterate their things
- ♀ the thief is handsome, with an abundant hair on his head, fate, handsome eyes with the black of his eyes greater than the whites; white in his extremities and his colour but mixed with redness; he is fat, good in his gentleness and manner, he submits courteously to a command
- ♂ the thief is slim, emaciated, has good bones, powerful, bald, with a handsome beard, pale, not straight in his thinking
- ☉ when the ☉ is on his own, not strongly aspected, and is the indicator of the thief, he will be fat, with

red and yellow eyes

- D if the D is not closely connected to another planet and she is the indicator of the thief then they are comely in appearance, white, and fat-cheeked

Mix the nature of the sign occupied by the planet that indicates the thief with the planet's nature to get a more complete picture of the thief's characteristics and manner:

- P his limbs are full of hair, he is handsome in stature, his gaze is toward the ground, he is bald, joyful, gay in his face, humorous, impudent in his speech
- O he is sharp-nosed, with a broad, protruding forehead, elevated hair<sup>1</sup>; his character is not known as it can vary widely, he finds power in what is hidden [secrets], in deception, and in trickery; he has broad nostrils, a fat, burly neck, black eyes; his eyebrows are smaller than the width of his eyes, and he is on the short side
- II he has a powerful stance, wide shoulders; his gentleness and character are good; some of them write, some who were trusted, and had a position among men, who were pleasant in their view
- S large shoulder-blades, solid bones; no hair, stingy, glum-faced, black in colour, gag-toothed, powerful stance, lower limbs more powerful than upper limbs
- Q the thief is blue, red-haired, reddish in colour, lank-haired, comely in appearance, superior in his higher joints which are more ample than his lower, slender legs, irascible, coarse, sharp-sighted as a lion; some are epileptic and known for it
- M has a straight posture, handsome body, a powerful stance and limbs, not excessively fat or slim,

---

<sup>1</sup>Dykes has 'trussed-up hair'

humorous, good in his gentleness, trustworthy, sincere, one of those who is educated in writing and what it is useful for, coveted for this, profitable in his uprightness and his friendliness in an affair

♂ handsome face and colouring, white, equal in his limbs; one of them does not differ from the other; he was educated in beating on strings and singing and the rules of tune and of poetry; a handsome face, good in his manner in calculating his livelihood, learned in words; he tends toward what is in the power of ♀ and lust for women, is greedy and stimulated toward it

♂ thick hair on his hands, elevated hair; no black in the pupil of his eye; bluish-black, powerful eyes, fat cheeks, small, narrow, protruding forehead; long-legged, large feet, wide shoulders; prone to embezzlement; hastens to his affairs with little diffidence or reflection; a disgraceful reputation, unpleasant

♂ long-legged, wide-thighed; the back of him is more attractive than the front; a lank long but small beard, red in his colour, clever, agile, delicate, a run-away slave, a marksman, works with his hands; he is a profiteer, a wastrel, a generous man; some have a craving for animals, some are bald

♂ thin-legged, miserable in his two legs, slim, a male; his face resembles that of a goat's in the dark; lank beard, sharp-eyed; his glance is toward the ground, his opinion does not change from one situation to another; trivial in thought and consideration

♂ neither tall nor slight put with a powerful stance, eager for ornamentation, eager for gathering properties, handsome beard, pleasing in his diet, good in his gentleness in his meals and in cleaning himself, abounding in expenses; one of his legs is longer or larger than the other

✠ wide shoulders, abundant hair on his head, small-headed, small-faced, narrow in his two sides; the blacks of his eyes are greater than the whites; bending down, he loves himself, is twisted in his sight

If a benefic aspects the planet indicating the thief he is of a noble lineage. If the malefics aspect the indicator, then he is a slave or one who does service.

If ♀ is the indicator, the thief is a woman or a lady who steals for women.

If ☿ is the indicator, the thief is a boy or a youth, or young man.

If ♂ is the indicator, he is a young man.

If ♋ is the indicator, the thief is middle-aged.

If ♏ is the indicator, the thief is old.

If the indicator is eastern, the thief is young; if western, he is not a youth but older.

If the indicator is at his first station, the thief is advanced in years, closer to old age than to youth. At second stage they are even closer to old age. If the indicator is coming out from under the Sun's rays and is eastern, it indicates youth; if coming out and western, it indicates they are an elder<sup>1</sup>

If ♏ is coming out from under the Sun's rays or becomes eastern then mix in his old age and whenever ♏ is eastern the thief is middle-aged.

If the indicator is ☿ or ♀ then the thief is a maiden or a young man, a youth. If they are western, then the indicate the thief is middle-aged.

---

<sup>1</sup>This probably applies to the inner planets who an emerge from under the Sun's rays either ahead (east) of the Sun or behind (west) of the Sun.

If the indicator is in his exaltation, the thief is healthy in his limbs. If in its dejection [fall] then it indicates unhealthy limbs. The same if the planet is nearing its exaltation or dejection. It will indicate the same if it conjoins with another planet that is exalted or dejected.

If planet is within seven days of being under the Sun's rays, the thief has stolen before.

If ♂ aspects the indicator, it indicates the thief has experienced imprisonment, agony, misery, and misfortune for prior thefts.

If the malefics do not aspect the Lot of Fortune, the thief has not stolen before this.

If ♏ aspects the ☽ and the ascendant, then it indicates the thief has used tricks and has deceived and misled so that he might steal.

If ♋ is the indicator, then it indicates the thief did not desire the theft and entered the house for something else but he saw an opportunity to steal and did so.

If ♂ is the one aspecting the ascendant or the ☽, then the thief weakened or dug out the wall of the house or broke the lock or copied the key or entered the house by a skylight.

If ♀ aspects the ascendant or the ☽, then the thief entered the house for conversation, and he is a friend of the people who live there, they trust him; but he will steal from them.

If ♄ aspects the ascendant or the ☽, then it indicates the thief entered the house by a ruse and subterfuge and cleverness and the wish to trouble the people of the house in which he committed the robbery.

### 5.36 The runaway

In the matter of a runaway or a fugitive, look at the ascendant and the ☽ for the runaway and the ☉ and midheaven for the condition of the one seeking the runaway.

If the ascendant and ☽ are in tropical signs it indicates the runaway has travelled a distance on land or sea. If in mutable signs, someone else has run away with them.

If they are in a crooked (short ascension) sign [♊,♋,♌,♍,♎,♏] then the runaway is confused and strayed from his path or they have been caught. If in a straight (long ascension) sign [♐ thru ♒] then the runaway is not confused, will stick to his path and will arrive where he wishes to go.

If the ☽ is not on the equator and is in the first 15° of a mutable sign this is the first time the person has runaway but they will make a habit of it after this. If in the last 15°, the person has runaway before.

If the ☽ is in the ascendant, 12th or 11th the runaway is headed East. If in the midheaven, 9th or 8th, they are headed South. If in the 7th, 6th or 5th, they are headed West; in the 4th, 3rd or 2nd, they are headed North.

If ☿ is stationary and with or aspecting the ☽ then the runaway has shed blood at the place he fled to and has been seized by force or put in chains so he may be sent back to his master or whomever is seeking them.

If ♃ is with or aspecting the ☽ then the runaway has raised suspicions or committed a ruse and has fallen in chains because of it. If ♃ is stationary and conjunct the ☽ the runaway may strangle themselves unless a benefic aspects, in which case the misfortune will leave them. If ♃ is not stationary when the ☽ joins him the runaway has lost any goods he may have stolen before he ran, has

wandered and will be seized and sent back to his master in misery and chains.

If the benefics are in the ascendant or aspect the ascendant or are with the ☽ then the runaway is truly free. If ♀ happens to be in this position the runaway will not be caught but if he is caught and returned he will be content.

If the ☽ is increasing the runaway will outrun his searchers; if the ☽ is decreasing the runaway will be caught.

If the ☼ is in the sign opposite the ascendant while ♄ is in the 8th sign from the ascendant, the person seeking the runaway will die before the runaway is caught.

If a malefic is in the midheaven or with the ☼, then the seeker will have no luck in his search, even he catches the runaway there will be only misery and misfortune to the seeker.

If ☽ is in the 7th from the ascendant, without the aspect of a benefic or other relief, and ♂ is in the 8th from the ascendant then misfortune and difficulty will reach the runaway and he may die because of it. The same will happen if ♄ (instead of ♂) is in the 8th and ♂ who trines him.

If the ☽ is under the ☼'s beams and has not light while ♂ aspects the destruction from burning or death by a knife will stop the runaway. To see how the death will come about, look to the sign the ☽ occupies as it is USB; if it is human, misfortune will reach the runaway from men; if the sign's nature is of a four-footed animal, the misfortune will come from animals; if the sign is in earth, a building will fall on him, if a water sign, he will drown in a flood, and so on with the rest of the signs. If ♄ is with ♄ he will kill himself; if ♀ and ♄ are with ♄ or aspect the ☽, they will dispel the misfortune, if God



wishes, especially if ♄ and ♀ are in their light and their power.

If the ☽ conjoins with ♂ in longitude, then beating and imprisonment will reach the runaway; if conjoining in latitude while ♄ aspects ♂ then fear of death will reach him but ♄ will allow him to escape.

If the ☽ is in angle with a malefic an unpleasant death will reach the runaway and either his hands or feet will be cut off. If the ☽ is in the midheaven with ♂ on his right and ♄ on his left (their signs enclosing the ☽'s sign or their aspects enclosing the ☽ by degrees) then the runaway will die by strangulation but if ♄ is on the right and ♂ on the left the runaway will be crucified. But if instead the ☼ is on the ☽'s left and ♂ on the right, the runaway will be burned alive.

The ☽ is under the ☼'s rays and ruler of the ☼'s sign does not aspect the ☽ then the seeker will die before the runaway is caught.

If the ascendant, the ☽ or the ☽'s dispositor are in a tropical sign (probably ♉ or ♋), the runaway will submissively return to the seeker.

If the ☽ aspects both benefics and malefics, if the malefic is square or opposed the ☽, the runaway will be caught when the ☽ reaches the malefic. If he is not caught at that time, he will run into misfortune and difficulties when the ☽ reaches the spot where the malefic was.

If the ☽ and the ascendant are injured and not in the aspect of the benefics the runaway, if he does return, will suffer calamity and misfortune.

If the benefics, in fixed signs, aspect the ascendant and the ☽ while they are not also in the aspect of malefics<sup>1</sup>,

---

<sup>1</sup>The text has 'benefics' but that makes no sense; Dykes has "*the Ascendant and the Moon are devoid of the aspect of infortunes*" (p305)

the runaway will escape. If the benefics are not in fixed signs the runaway will return or be caught but evil and suffering will not reach him and the seeker's anger will be shattered.

If the ☉ aspects the ascendant and the ♃, then it indicates that, whoever runs away or steals goods at that hour, [his master] will triumph over the runaway and the goods and get the better of him. If ♂ aspects the ascendant and the ♃, he will get power over him soon; if ♄ aspects the pair, he will get power over him after delays and trouble. If ♄ is the 7th sign from the ascendant, his master's anger will be dissolved and there will be no disgrace or evil for the runaway; if ♀ is in the 7th sign from the rising sign, the runaway is in a place where the gods are worshipped.

If the ruler of the ascendant is in the first decan of a sign or if a retrograde planet is with the ruler of the ascendant or aspects its house, the runaway is nearby.

If no planet is with or aspecting the ascendant or the ♃, look to see if the ascendant or ♃ are in:

- ♊ or ♋, ♌, ♍ or ♎ as then the master will soon have power over the runaway and he will return submissively of his own accord. If only the ♃ is in ♊ and the ascendant is in signs other than those just mentioned, the runaway will not be caught
- ♏ the master will get the better of the runaway but only after effort, trouble, and delay
- ♋ the first 15° of ♋ and the runaway is not caught within 2 days he will not be caught at all; if the one of the pair is in the last 15° of ♋, the runaway will soon be caught
- ♎ the runaway will soon be caught in a place where the gods are worshipped

- ☊ if in the first half of ☊, the runaway will be in the house of an important, powerful, strong, and noble person and the master will not get to the runaway except after delay and trouble  
 ☋ capturing the runaway will be difficult as he is fast and constantly on the move  
 ☌ the master will catch the runaway but, due to the severity of his anger, the runaway will flee again  
 ☍ the runaway will be caught in a place where the gods or worshipped or he will return on his own  
 ☎ it the master does not find the runaway with 5 days, he will die and never know where the runaway went  
 ☏ the runaway will be on the constant move and his master will only find him after delays and trouble  
 ☐ in the first 10°, he will be caught; if not, the runaway gets away  
 ☑ in the first degrees, the runaway will not be caught, in later degrees, he will not get away

If the ☽ is in the first half of a mutable sign, this is the first time the runaway has fled; in the last half of a mutable sign, he has fled before.

### Time unknown

If the seeker does not know when the runaway fled, use the time at which they were first reported gone and then look at who the ☽ first joins.

If she meets first with a benefic and then a malefic, there will be good in the beginning, bad in the end; the reverse if she meets first with a malefic and then a benefic.

If there is a planet in the first 10° of the ascendant the action will go easily; in the later degrees, there will be delays and difficulties.

If ♄ is in the ascendant and the ♃ conjoints ♈ or ♉, things will go easily but end will be troublesome and bad. If ♈ or ♉ is in the ascendant and the ♃ conjoined with ♄, the reverse.

If the ♃ is under the ☉'s beams (within 15° of the ☉) the runaway will not be caught or they'll be caught after a delay. Anything begun at such a time will be bad.

If the ♃ is in a partile (same degree) conjunction with a malefic the runaway will escape and stolen or lost goods will not be recovered; and every action begun under such conditions will be successful.

There is a missing text at this point and Dorotheus jumps into describing conditions for a sinking ship.

*“...or boarding a ship at sea is bad, and it indicates that misinformation and terror will reach him who boards a ship. If it is at the conjunction or at the opposition [of the Sun and the Moon] while the malefics aspect the luminaries from opposition and Mercury is with the malefics which injure the luminaries, then it indicates that whoever boards the ship at sea at that house, the ship will sink and its people and what is in it will be lost....whoever runs away at that hour will soon dies in this running away of his.”*

*“{Conjunction and opposition kill and harm everyone and every action, especially if the conjunction or opposition happens to be [at] his nativity. If Mercury is with the malefics, it increases the power for the malefics in what there is of calamities and evil from the malefics.}”<sup>1</sup>*

---

<sup>1</sup>The “conjunction and opposition” probably references the pre-radix conjunction or opposition of the ☉ and ♃; the syzygy that happened just before the date and time of the chart; in natal astrology it is called the “pre-natal syzygy” or SAN.

### 5.37 The treatment of Spirits

If you want to expel a spirit from a house or a person by using drugs, incantations, religious remedies, entreaty, appeal, or some other strategy then begin your action when the ascendant and the ☽ are in ♊, ♋, or ♒ and avoid acting when they are in ♉ or ♏.

It's good when the pair are in ♏, ♌, ♎, ♍ or ♋ and even better if ♋ and ♎ are in the ascendant with the ☽.

There will be no good in the action if the pair are in ♏ or ♌.

### 5.38 Taking medicine or a remedy

If you want a medicine or remedy for the nose, or sickness in the head, or diarrhea to work then begin when the ☽ is waxing and in ♊ or ♋, which “*two signs magnify and are called the ‘region of ascent’*” and it is best if the benefics also aspect the ☽.

If the medicine is for diarrhea or stomach upset, and is an enema or drink, it is best to take the medicine when the ☽ is in ♌ or ♏, “*as these place[s] compress and are called the ‘regions of lowness’*”, and it is best if the benefics also aspect the ☽.

### 5.39 On being bled or going under the knife

Avoid being bled or going under the knife when the ascendant or the ☽ is in ♋, ♏, ♍, or ♋. It should also be avoided when the ☽ is new and not separated from the ☼ by at least 13° or when it is separating from an opposition of the ☼ and waning.

As well, ensure that ♄ is not with or aspecting the ☽ or the ascendant.

If someone does undergo surgery when ♂ or ♄ is with or aspecting the ☽ or ascendant, then the person “*is not about to escape from it or he will soon become accustomed to this cutting.*” It is best for this if the ☽ is waning and “*the malefics are not in the succedent of the ☽, that is when they are behind the ☽*”<sup>1</sup>

“*Let the ☽ and the ascendent be with ♀ or [let] ♄ or ♀ aspect the ascendent while the ☽ is among them free from the malefics.*”

Avoid any treatment, by knife or scalpel, to the part of the body ruled by the sign the ☽ or ascendant occupies at the time.

If the ☽ or the ascendant are in tropical or mutable signs there will be no good in the action unless the benefics are with or aspecting the ☽.

#### 5.40 Treating an eye infection or covering of over the eye or treatments with iron

Begin such a treatment when the ☽ is increasing in her light and motion and with or in the aspect of ♄ or ♀ and free from ♂ as ♂ is strongest in harming the ☽ when she is increasing in light and motion.

#### 5.41 Illness as Qitrinus the Sadwali says

To know the condition of a patient at the beginning of his illness and for how long it will endure, look at the ascendant and its ruler, the ☽ and its ruler, any planet the ☽ conjuncts, and the ☽’s dodecatemorian.

---

<sup>1</sup>As he’s used the word ‘succedent’ here I think he is implying primary motion i.e. you don’t want the malefics rising after the ☽. This appears to contradict the earlier admonition to any action when the ☽ is waning; possibly, a waxing ☽ is better for blood-letting and a waning ☽ is better for surgery when you don’t want a lot of blood.

If, at the time the patient became ill, benefics were ruling the ☿ and the ascendant, or aspecting them and the ☿'s dodecatemorion, or the ☿ was with a benefic, then a quick recovery is indicated but if the malefics hold these relationships with the ☿ and ascendant, the patient will be ill for a long time.

If the lord of the illness is ♂, the illness is the result of heat; if ♄, the illness is from consumption, coldness and swelling and will be with him for a long time.

If the ☿ is afflicted by the malefics but not the ascendant, the illness will harm his body.

If the ascendant is harmed by the malefics but not the ☿ then the injury is to his soul and will overwhelm his understanding and blind him or something similar disaster that will ruin his soul.

If the malefics aspect the ascendant without the aspect of the benefics then the patient will die because of the illness, and grievance and pain will in the limb indicated by the sign occupied<sup>1</sup> by the ☿ or ascendant and if malefics are in this sign or its opposition the pain will be harsher.

To know whether or not he will escape from the disease, look to the aspects of the planets. If you want to know when the condition of the patient will be heavy or light, look to the ☿. If the ☿ by transit or its motion reaches the malefics or they aspect it, the pain will be the heaviest and most severe for the patient and if the aspect is also in the place or terms of malefics it will the condition will be the worst possible. The patient will be released as long as the ☿ is in a place and term away from death, as when it reaches the benefics or they aspect it, as then his pain will be lightened and he is helped in his agony.

---

<sup>1</sup>The text says 'governed' but that would limit the ☿ to ♄.

The ♃ reaches its left square after seven days; its left trine after nine days; its opposition after fourteen days; its right trine after eighteen, its right square after twenty-one, and rejoins its original place after twenty-eight days. These days are the best for judgment. If when the ♃ reaches one of these places, a malefic conjoins or aspects it, the the pain will be harsher for the patient. If, on these days, the ♃ is conjoined or aspected by a benefic, the pain is lightened and the patient is helped.

Judgment is best when the ♃ has moved 10 or 40 degrees from where it was when the illness was first begun. If the ♃ in those places, is conjoined or aspected by a benefic, the patient will be released from the illness and recover from it. If the malefics are met with in those places, the patients pain will increase and he will die from the illness and it will be worse if ♂ is met with and the chart was drawn by day; if ♃ was met with and the chart was drawn by night, it indicates the severity and harshness of the illness.

If the chart drawn at the beginning of the illness has the ascendant or Moon in a tropical sign the illness will be easier or the patient will recover from it but sometimes there is a relapse. If both the lights are under the earth, it indicates the illness is hideous, severe, but loss and death are not indicated. It is best to look at the aspects of the malefics and benefics to the lights to discover the patient's condition and where he will wind up.

If the ♃ reaches ♃ on one of the days declared best for judgment, the illness will increase because of fevers and chills and stretching and extension of the nerves. If it reaches ♂ on one of those days, it indicates the illness will increase and be harsher from a hot, strong, sharp fever and the illness will be from excitement and hear and sometimes he will pour forth blood and sometimes this will be of help and it will make him comfortable.



If the ☽ is waxing when the person becomes ill and the ☽ is in the same sign as the ☉ or ☿, then on the day the ☽ reaches the square or opposition to itself, loss and death are to be feared for the patient. But if the ☽ is square or opposed to itself while ♃ aspects, it indicates his recovery and good health. If, instead, the ☽ is waning and is with or aspects ♃, then the patient will not benefit from ♃.

If the ☽ is with the ☉ or emerges from the ☉, then, as for him who becomes ill at that hour or whose illness is beginning then, when the ☽ reaches that sign or the sign opposite the sign that held the ☽ while benefics are with or aspect it, it indicates the patients recovery. If the ☽ reaches malefics instead, it indicates the patient's death and loss.

Concerning matters involving the patient, look to the angles. The ascendant indicates the doctor, the midheaven the patient, the descendant, the cause of the illness, the IC his recovery and his medication. If the patient becomes ill when malefics are in the ascendant then he will not benefit from any the doctor's drugs, exertions, or treatments; this is because everything from the doctor becomes an injury. If the benefics are in the ascendant when the patient becomes ill, then he will benefit from the doctor and his treatment will be pleasant. If a benefic is in the midheaven, it indicates the patient will be treated with a medicine that will be of benefit. If a benefic is in the descendant, the patient will recover from the power of the drug which he drinks, but it will treated him not at all, and it will not be an illness of which he will be afraid, but its treatment will be easy. If there is a malefic in the ascendant and a benefic in opposition, then it indicates that even if the doctor treating him his kind and learned, he will not benefit from it and the reputation of this man and his praise will fall to someone other than his doctor.

If you have the person's natal chart and want to know his condition and death, look to see if the ♃ is transiting the sign occupied by his natal ♄. If, when he becomes ill, ♄ is with the ♃ in its transit and aspects it, then this illness will be severe and one will fear for him. If, at the beginning of the illness, the ♃ transits the sign ♋ occupies in the natal chart while ♋ is with or aspecting the transit ♃, then the patient will be ill from excitement and intense heat and one will fear for him. If the ♃ transits the sign holding both ♄ and ♋ in the natal chart and one of them is with or aspecting the ♃, then it indicates that his illness will be harsher in him and will be heavy and one will fear for him. If the ♃ is transiting a natal sign that holds malefics and he reaches a benefic in that sign or a benefic aspects him, then it indicates that this illness will last a long time and will be harsh but he will be released from it.

For every known nativity, count how many days have passed from birth until the day they became ill. Reduce the result by nines or sevens (for premature births)<sup>1</sup>. If there is no remainder after the reduction, it indicates the patient has completed his years and is dead. Since the year has 365 days, reducing by sevens leaves 1 day, reducing by nines leaves 5 days. For a premature birth, count one day for each year that has passed until he became ill; for a full term birth, count five days for each year. Then count the signs between the ☿ and ♃ in the nativity and the signs between the ☿ and the ♃ now, and keep the number. Then subtract the number of those signs which are between the ☿ and the ♃ from the days which have passed of his life till the day he became ill. If nothing is left of the number of these days, then it indicates that this illness is a sever illness or he does not hope to recover or be released from it.

---

<sup>1</sup>This is essentially modulo math i.e. number of days MOD 9 or 7.

If the ☿ is transiting the sixth house of illness or the ☿'s transit has reached the eighth house or the fourth or the sign occupied by the ☿ in the nativity, the native will be ill and the illness will be severe and hideous. If the ☿ aspects benefics in these transits, he will escape from the illness. If in its transit it aspects malefics, one will fear for him from the illness. The illness is the worst if at the beginning of the illness the transit ☿ is in a sign in the natal chart that holds the deadly star. And the deadly star is the first lord of the triplicity of the fourth because the first lord of the triplicity of the house of the fathers indicates death and the second illnesses and sickness. Some of the lords of the triplicity are called "evil". They are "evil" when the commencement is by day and the lords of the triplicity are diurnal stars and when the commencement is at night and the lords of the triplicity are nocturnal stars. If none of the lords of the triplicity of the house of the fathers is "evil", then it indicates illnesses and a chronic disease. This is the most hideous of what is possible, that according to the transit of the stars the deadly star is with the ☿ or aspects the ☿.

Concerning the matter of the illness consider how the positions of the ☼ and the ☿ are in the natal chart and when the illness begins. If the ☿ is in its left square from her natal place or has reached the transit of the ☼ at the start of the illness then it indicates the illness will leave him and he will recover from it. But if it does not reach the transit of the ☼ before it reaches the left square, then the illness will stay with him a long time and will not leave except after misery and delay.

#### 5.42 The Will

If a man wants to make his will, let him start when the ☿ is ascendent or in a tropical sign as it indicates the will and the legacy will be changed. Let him make his will

when the ☽ is increasing latitude, decreasing in computation [slowing] and increasing in light [waxing] and it is ascending in the North, conjoining with a planet in its station and not under the ☉'s rays. If it is under ☉'s rays but emerging and not in the same sign as the ☉, then it does not indicate immediate death.

Avoid making your will in the hour in which ☿ is with the ☽ or in the ascendant as the hour indicates the will will not be changed, and the patient will die from his illness, and the will will not be executed after his death, but someone after him will refute him in his will and write in the will or steal the will. You should not make any will when ☿ is with the ☽ or in the ascendant or in the quartile of the ascendant or in its opposition or aspects the ☽ or the ascendant.

If ☿ is not in these positions but ♄ is with the ☽ or with the ascendant, then it indicates that there will be a delay in the time at which he makes the will, and the will will be removed afterwards and will not be executed in his lifetime or after his death.

If ♄ is not in this position but ♀ or ♁ is with the ☽ or in the ascendant, then, after some of the life of the owner of the will has passed, he will change the will.

#### 5.43 On clarifying the phases of the Moon and its nodes

The head is called the "ascending" and its tail the "descending", and the signs said to be "obscured" are from ♌ to ♍, which is the region of descent, while from ♎ to ♋ is the region of ascent.

If the ☽ is in the region of ascent increasing in motion, then he who buys at this time will buy dearly and at an increase in its price over what is right.

If the ♪ is in the region of descent and is slowing in motion, then he who buys at this time will buy cheaply and at a price less than what is right.

Look at the ♪'s phase. If it is emerging from under the ☉'s rays until it reaches the left square of the ☉ he benefits from those who's intention it is to buy and to sell sincerely and faithfully as he who buys at this time buys the commodity for a price that is right and in which there is neither cheapness nor expensiveness.

When the ♪ goes from the left square of the ☉ until it reaches the opposition of the ☉, then selling benefits from this and commencing a litigation.

When it moves from the the opposition of the ☉ until it reaches the right square of the ☉, then buying benefits from this and what is properly sought.

When the ♪ moves from the right square of the ☉ until it reaches the ☉'s position, then the people whose intention is proper and just benefit from this.

The fifth book of Dorotheus is completed, and with its completion the whole book ends. Praise to God Whose praise is true, and His prayers upon His servants whom He chooses and upon all His prophets and His messages.

Collated against the base-copy one word by one and corrected in the measure of my ability and diligence. In God is success.



## DODECATEMORIA

---

*Dodecatemoria* literally means “the twelfth part”. They appear to be based on a Babylonian method that divides each sign by  $2.5^\circ$ , assigning the first  $2.5^\circ$  division to the sign itself, the next  $2.5^\circ$  to the next sign, etc. until you reach the end of the sign. For example, the 12th parts of  $\text{♌}$  run  $0^\circ \text{♌}$ ,  $2^\circ 30' \text{♍}$ ,  $5^\circ 00' \text{♎}$ ,  $7^\circ 30' \text{♏}$ , etc. Cuneiform tablets have been found describing the calculation of the dodecatemoria by multiplying the degrees by 12 or 13 but without any further explanation (HHA p12n3).

Examples of both approaches can be found in Firmicus and Paulus. Each produce the same result by different means<sup>1</sup>.

Firmicus’ method is to multiply the degrees and minutes of the planet by 12 and then add the full degrees of the position. For example, to find the dodecatemoria of  $27^\circ \approx 24'$  we take:

$$(27 + 24/60) \times 12 = 27.4 \times 12 = 328.8$$

$$\approx 27^\circ 24' = 327.4 + 328.8 = 656.2$$

$$656.2 - 360 = 296.2$$

$$296.2 = 296^\circ 12' - 270 = 26 \text{ ♎ } 12$$

To find the 12th part of a planet according to Paulus of Alexandria, we are to multiply the degrees by 13 and add the degrees of the sign the planet occupies:

---

<sup>1</sup>For reference see the [Skyscript glossary entry for dodecatemoria](#), Firmicus’ *Mathesis* Book II.17, James Holden translation or Book II.13 in the Jean Rhys Bram translation; *Paulus of Alexandria Introduction to Astrology* §22, James Holden translation or the same section in *Late Classical Astrology: Paulus Alexandrinus and Olympidorus* translated by Dorian Gieseler Greenbaum, MA.

$$(27 + 24/60) \times 13 = 27.4 \times 13 = 356.2$$

♊ begins at 300°

$$356.2 + 300 = 656.2 - 360 = 296.2$$

$$296.2 = 296^\circ 12' = 26 \text{ ♋ } 12$$

As shown in the examples above, if you assume the method always accounts for the actual longitude degrees of the planet both methods give the same result; however, those results do not always agree with the Babylonian 2.5° sub-divisions, instead you often end up in the *next* subdivision. For example, while the above example gives ♋ as the final sign, the 2.5° subdivision that 27♊24 falls between (25°00' to 27°30') yields ♏.

To always arrive at the same sign as the subdivisions, use multiplication by 12 and add 30° x the *ordinal* number of the sign minus one i.e. ♀ is the 3rd sign so 2 x 30 = 60; ♊ is the 11th sign so 10 x 30=300, etc. or you can use the Firmicus method and simply add the the sign degrees instead of the position degrees.

In the example above, if, instead of adding the full 327.4 degrees to the result of the 12 x multiplication we add only the ♊ degrees of 300 we'd get 328.8+300=628.8-360=268.8 which gives 28 ♏ 48, the same sign the Babylonian division yields. This appears to be the method Manilius spoke of<sup>1</sup> and that Masha'allah used<sup>2</sup>. Note however that while the *sign* agrees, the final degree arrived at (28.8) differs from the degree (26.2) in the previous examples, a roughly 2.5° difference.

The 2.5° subdivisions show up in Dorotheus with regards to establishing which degrees of a sign are mascu-

<sup>1</sup>*Manilius: Astronomica* trans. G.P. Gould, Book 2.693-737.

<sup>2</sup>*Persian Nativities Volume 1: Māshā'allāh & Abū'Alī* Ch. II.4 p94-95.



line or feminine (Book I.8) and in Ptolemy; however, he did not think much of them:

The signs have been subdivided by some persons into parts still more minute, which have been named places and degrees of dominion. Thus the twelfth part of a sign, or two degrees and a half, has been called a place, and the dominion of it given to the signs next succeeding. Other persons again, pursuing various modes of arrangement, attribute to each planet certain degrees, as being aboriginally connected with it, in a manner somewhat similar to the Chaldaic arrangement of the terms. *But all these imaginary attributes cannot be herein detailed, for they receive no confirmation from nature, are not capable of being rationally demonstrated, and are, in fact merely offspring of scientific vanity.* (Book I.XXV Ashmand translation<sup>1</sup>, emphasis added)

## A.1 Examples of using the 12ths

### Firmicus

Look also [to see] whether the ♃, full [of light] by day, throws her dodecatemoria into the terms of ♂, or whether of little light, i.e. waning, throws it into [the terms] of ♎, or whether ♂ in the DSC...or ♀ into [those] of ♂, and ♂ [into those of ♀... and they take their power from the terms and decans and the sects that may help or that may harm.

The beneficence of ♋ lapses when his beneficence is afflicted by the weakness of the sign,

---

<sup>1</sup>Book I.21 in the Robbins translation.

or the degrees, or the decan, or the exchanging of sect. But also the malevolence of  $\text{♄}$  increases more strongly when, provoked by the quality of the house, or by the terms, or by the decan, or by the sign, or by the [exchanging of] sect, he receives the power to do harm. In a similar fashion [you may judge] the other stars (MH II.17.4-5)

## Paulus

The *dōdekatēmorion* of the benefics contributes much whenever it falls in the *zōdion* where the  $\text{☉}$ ,  $\text{♄}$ , or star of  $\text{♁}$  is, or on one of the four pivots, the Lot of Fortune or Spirit or even Necessity<sup>1</sup>, or on the prenatal *Conjunction* or *Whole Moon*. For through this theory it will be necessary to distinguish the fortunate, long-lived and blessed. Just as when the *dōdekatēmorion* of the malefic stars falls in the *zōdion* where the  $\text{☉}$ ,  $\text{♄}$ , or star of  $\text{♁}$  is, or one one of four pivots, or on the Lot of Fortune, Spirit, or Necessity, or on the prenatal *Conjunction* or *Whole Moon*, it points out laborers, those unable to acquire property and cursed, since it sets down short lives, violent deaths, sufferings or feebleness (PAG §22).

## Olympiodorus

Olympiodorus says “That if the *dōdekatēmoria* of the benefic stars are found either on the pivots or on the lots of Fortune, Spirit or Necessity or in the place of the preceding *Conjunction* or *Whole Moon* for the nativity, or where the  $\text{☉}$ ,  $\text{♄}$ , or  $\text{♁}$  is, in these circumstances the na-

---

<sup>1</sup>The Lot of  $\text{♁}$ .

tivity is fortunate and glorious and producing many years for itself.”

He goes on to say the opposite is true if the dodecatemorion of malefic planets fall in these places “For it brings about laborers, and those who are ill-spirited and not successful in acquiring property and short-lived, and sometimes violent deaths.”

VISIBILITY (PLANET PHASES)

---

A planet’s visibility (V) or invisibility (I) depends on its phase/distance from the ☉:

I	USB	within 15° of the ☉
V	Morning star	superior planets, 15-120°
V		♂, 15-28° rising from ☉
V		♀, 15-48° rising from ☉
V	Acronychal (R <sub>x</sub> )	superior planets, 120-172°
I	Curtailed Passage (R <sub>x</sub> )	superior planets, 173-187°
V	R <sub>x</sub> to 2nd Sta.	superior planets, 188-240°
V	Evening star	superior planets, 240-345°
V		♂, 15-28° setting into ☉
V		♀, 15-48° setting into ☉

Table B.1: Planet Phase (Visibility)

**Lunar Phases<sup>2</sup>**

The lunar phases are defined by the ☾’s distance in degrees from the ☉:

0°	New Moon
1°	Rising (Coming Forth)
45°	Waxing Crescent
90°	1st Quarter
135°	1st Gibbous (Double Convex)
180°	Full Moon
225°	2nd Gibbous (Disseminating)
270°	2nd Quarter
315°	Waning Crescent (Balsamic)
345°	Setting

---

<sup>2</sup>References: *Valens Anthologies* trans. by M. Riley, Ch. 2 §35, *Ancient Astrology Vol. I* by Demetra George, Ch. 29.